



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

# ITALIAN GRAMMAR

---

COMPIUTO

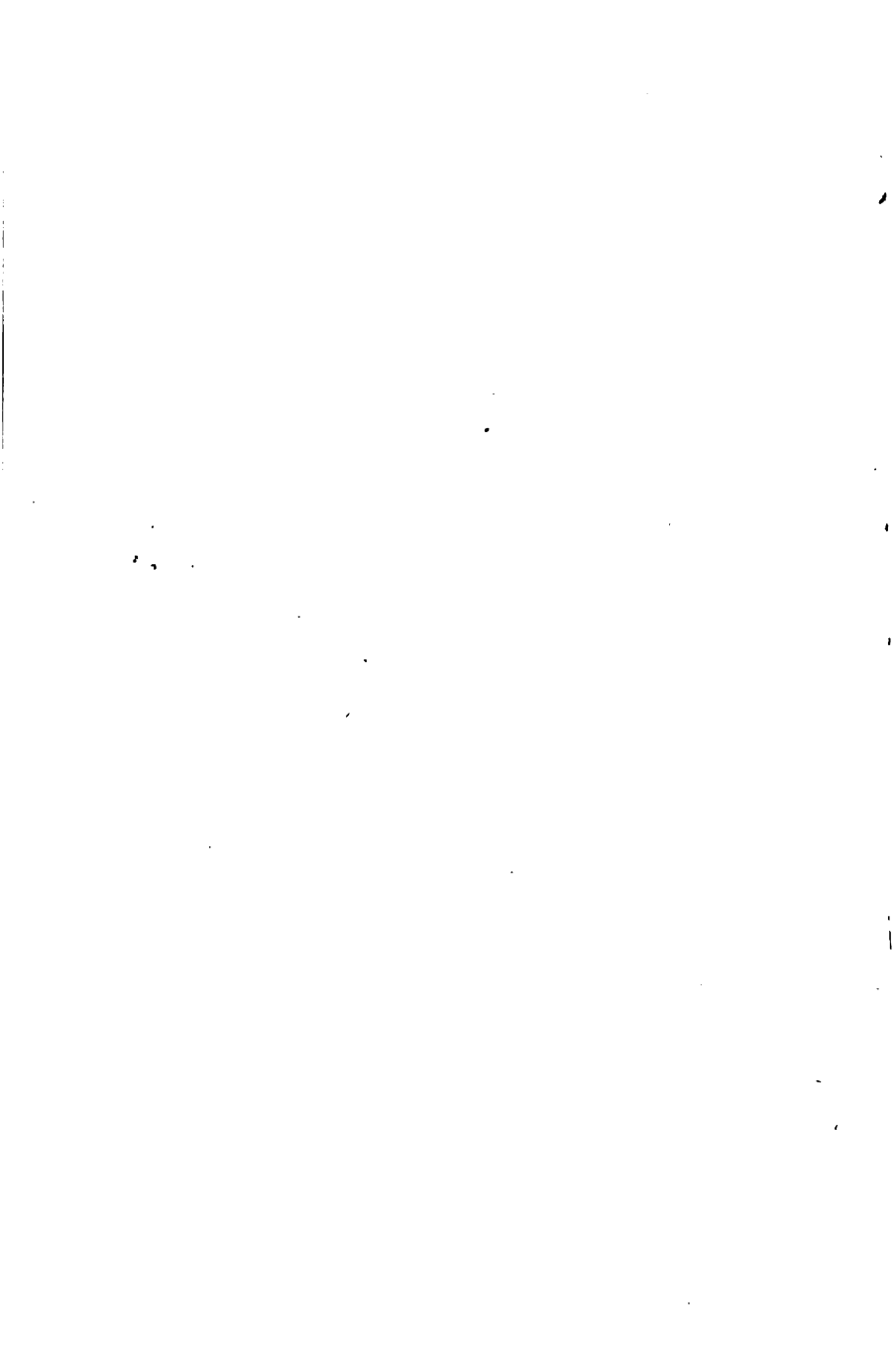
DELL'OPERA

---

EducT 1918. 94. 435



ed  
5/17



Heath's Modern Language Series.

# ITALIAN GRAMMAR.

BY

C. H. GRANDGENT,

DIRECTOR OF MODERN LANGUAGE INSTRUCTION IN THE BOSTON  
PUBLIC SCHOOLS, FORMERLY TUTOR IN MODERN  
LANGUAGES IN HARVARD UNIVERSITY.

---

*Third Edition, Revised and Enlarged.*

---

BOSTON, U.S.A.:  
D. C. HEATH & CO., PUBLISHERS.  
1894.

Educ T 1918.94,435



*Copyright, 1887,*

By C. H. GRANDGENT.

---

ELECTROTYPED BY J. S. CUSHING & Co., BOSTON.

## PREFACE.

---

THIS volume is the result of an attempt to put into convenient form and the smallest possible compass all the grammar that the ordinary student of Italian will need. Short as the book is, it contains some paragraphs which beginners will probably skip: the longer lists of words and endings, and a great part of the chapters on suffixes and irregular verbs will be useful mainly for reference. The vocabularies cover the twenty-one exercises; they are not intended to include words explained in the notes, nor proper names that are exactly the same in Italian and in English.

I have endeavored to make the book represent the Italian language as it is spoken and written at the present day; the exercises are taken chiefly from reading-books lately prepared for Tuscan schools. Still, I have tried to give also as many obsolete forms as students of the Italian classics will require.

It has been my aim throughout to make the rules clear for all classes of pupils, even for those ignorant of other foreign languages, provided they understand the technical words commonly used in grammars. With this object in view, I have ascribed to the Italian vowels the pronunciation of the English ones that are most like them: an accurate description of the Italian sounds would, I fear, prove confusing to beginners who have had no training in phonetics. It will be easy for the instructor to explain not only



the vowels, but some of the consonants, and the division of words into syllables, much better than can be done in a book like this.

The authorities I have consulted most are the dictionaries of Fanfani, Rigutini and Fanfani, Fornari (*Nuovo Bazzarini*), and Tommaseo and Bellini. I have made but little use of other grammars; I am, however, indebted to Toscani for some ideas and a few of my examples. The chapters on syntax, and the treatment of irregular verbs, pronouns, suffixes, and the plural of words in *-co* and *-go* are almost entirely the result of original work.

In conclusion, I wish to express my gratitude to Professor Nash, of Harvard, to my friend and teacher, Sig. Filippo Orlando, of Florence, and to the gentlemen who assisted me in correcting the proof-sheets; and I wish above all to thank Professor Sheldon, of Harvard, and Professor Bendelari, of Yale, without whose aid and encouragement I should scarcely have ventured to offer this book to the public.

CAMBRIDGE, September, 1887.

## TABLE OF CONTENTS.

---

|   | PAGE  |
|---|-------|
| PRONUNCIATION .....   | 1-7   |
| ARTICLES .....  | 7-11  |
| The Definite Article .....                                  | 7-10  |
| The Indefinite Article .....                                | 10    |
| <i>Exercises 1, 2</i> .....                                 | 11    |
| NOUNS .....   | 11-17 |
| Gender .....  | 12-13 |
| Number .....  | 13-16 |
| <i>Exercises 3, 4</i> .....                                 | 16-17 |
| ADJECTIVES .....  | 18-23 |
| Gender and Number .....                                     | 18-20 |
| Comparison.....   | 20-22 |
| <i>Exercises 5, 6</i> .....                                 | 22-23 |
| AUGMENTATIVES AND DIMINUTIVES ; NUMERALS .....              | 23-29 |
| Augmentative and Diminutive Endings .....                   | 23-25 |
| Numerals....  | 25-28 |
| <i>Exercises 7, 8</i> .....                                 | 28-29 |
| DEMONSTRATIVE, INTERROGATIVE, RELATIVE, AND POSSESSIVE PRO- |       |
| NOUNS .....   | 30-35 |
| Demonstrative Pronouns.....                                 | 30-31 |
| Interrogative Pronouns .....                                | 31    |
| Relative Pronouns .....                                     | 31-33 |
| Possessive Pronouns .....                                   | 33-34 |
| <i>Exercises 9, 10</i> .....                                | 35    |
| PERSONAL PRONOUNS .....                                     | 36-46 |
| Conjunctive Forms.....                                      | 36-40 |

|   | PAGE   |
|---|--------|
| Disjunctive Forms .....   | 40-42  |
| Forms of Address .....  | 43-44  |
| <i>Exercises 11, 12</i> .....                                   | 44-46  |
| AUXILIARY VERBS .....   | 47-55  |
| Auxiliaries of Voice and Tense .....                            | 47-53  |
| <b>Essere</b> .....   | 47     |
| <b>Avere</b> .....  | 48     |
| Modal Auxiliaries .....   | 53-54  |
| <i>Exercises 13, 14</i> .....                                   | 54-55  |
| REGULAR AND IRREGULAR VERBS .....                               | 55-65  |
| The Regular Verb .....  | 56-59  |
| First Conjugation .....   | 56-57  |
| Second and Third Conjugations .....                             | 57-58  |
| Fourth Conjugation .....  | 58-59  |
| The Irregular Verb .....  | 60-63  |
| <b>Porre</b> .....  | 60-61  |
| <i>Exercises 15, 16</i> .....                                   | 63-65  |
| MOODS AND TENSES .....  | 65-74  |
| Infinitive and Participle .....                                 | 65-68  |
| Past, Present, and Future .....                                 | 68-69  |
| Conditional .....   | 69     |
| Subjunctive .....   | 69-72  |
| <i>Exercises 17, 18</i> .....                                   | 72-74  |
| CONJUNCTIONS, PREPOSITIONS, AND ADVERBS .....                   | 74-84  |
| Conjunctions .....  | 74-76  |
| Prepositions .....  | 76-80  |
| Adverbs .....   | 80-82  |
| <i>Exercises 19, 20</i> .....                                   | 83-84  |
| INDEFINITE PRONOUNS .....                                       | 84-87  |
| <i>Exercise 21</i> .....  | 87     |
| LIST OF IRREGULAR VERBS ARRANGED ACCORDING TO CONJUGATION ..... | 88-100 |
| First Conjugation .....   | 89-90  |
| Second Conjugation .....  | 90-93  |

# CONTENTS.

vii

|  | PAGE    |
|--|---------|
| Third Conjugation .....                                  | 93-98   |
| Present Regular .....                                    | 93-96   |
| Present Irregular .....                                  | 96-98   |
| Fourth Conjugation .....                                 | 99-100  |
| Present Regular .....                                    | 99      |
| Present Irregular .....                                  | 99-100  |
| ALPHABETICAL LIST OF IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE VERBS ..... | 101-105 |
| ITALIAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY .....                         | 107-114 |
| ENGLISH-ITALIAN VOCABULARY .....                         | 115-121 |
| APPENDIX .....   | 123-127 |
| Additional Notes on Pronunciation .....                  | 123-125 |
| Inflections of the Voice .....                           | 126-127 |
| INDEX .....  | 129-132 |



# ITALIAN GRAMMAR.

---

## PRONUNCIATION.

1. The Italian alphabet has the same letters as the English, except that *k*, *w*, *x*, and *y* do not occur in modern Italian.

2. The Italians distinguish seven vowels: *a*, close *e*, open *e*, *i*, close *o*, open *o*, *u*; each of which always has the same sound, no matter what may be its position in the word, and never tends, as do the English long vowels, to become a diphthong. Italian vowels are all pronounced very quickly; hence there is but little difference in quantity between accented and unaccented sounds. English-speaking students must carefully avoid drawling the accented and slighting the unaccented syllables; they should try to give to every Italian vowel about the length of *i* in "bitter."

**A** is nearly like *a* in "father": as *fava*, *canna*, *cassa*, *palla*.

**E**, close, is nearly like *a* in "fate": as *beve*, *vere*, *stelle*, *messe*.

**E**, open, may be formed by trying to pronounce *e* in "bell" with the mouth very wide open: as *bella*, *amena*, *fera*, *pensa*.

**I** is nearly like *ee* in "feet": as *miri, vini, fissi, spilli*.

**O**, close, is nearly like *o* in "mope": as *dopo, dove, bollo, sotto*.

**O**, open, is nearly like *aw* in "saw" pronounced with the mouth wide open: as *no, odi, poi, donna*.

**U** is nearly like *oo* in "boot": as *una, cura, nulla, ruppi*.

*a*. The letters *i* and *u* are sometimes used to represent consonant sounds (see 4); but in formulating rules they are always counted as vowels.

**3.** As close and open vowels are not distinguished in spelling, some rules are necessary:—

(1) Unaccented *e* and *o* are always close: as *mare*, "sea"; *amo*, "I love."

(2) *E* and *o* are close in all monosyllables\* ending in a consonant: as *con*, "with"; *non*, "not"; *per*, "for."

(3) In monosyllables\* and oxytones† ending in a vowel, final *e* is close, final *o* is open: as *che*, "what"; *me*, "me"; *re*, "king"; *credè*, "he believed"; *perchè*, "why"; *do*, "I give"; *Po*, "Po"; *sarò*, "I shall be"; *andò*, "he went." Exceptions: final *e* is open in *è* = "is," *re* = "re," interjections (as *aimè*, "alas"; *chè*, "nonsense"), proper names (as *Noè*, "Noah"), and foreign words (as *caffè*, "coffee"); final *o* is close in *lo* and *o*.

(4) Accented *e* and *o* are always open in the groups *ie* and *uo*: as *piède*, "foot"; *fuoco*, "fire." *E* and *o* standing for *ie* and *uo* are open: as *ven* = *viene*, "he comes"; *cor* = *cuore*, "heart."

\* Not including shortened forms of words that regularly have more than one syllable.

† Words accented on the last syllable.

(5) In words that have always formed a part of the spoken language, accented *e* is nearly always close when it represents Latin *ē* or *ĕ*, open when it represents Latin *ē* or *æ*; accented *o* is nearly always close when it represents Latin *ō* or *ū*, open when it represents Latin *ō* or *au*. In book words accented *e* and *o* are usually open.

In all cases not covered by the first three rules, the quality of *e* and *o* will be marked in this book, an acute accent (´) denoting the close, a circumflex (^) the open sound: as *avére*, "to have"; *méno*, "less"; *tiéne*, "he holds"; *liétto*, "happy"; *poétta*, "poet"; *óra*, "hour"; *mólto*, "much"; *buòno*, "good"; *pôco*, "little"; *môto*, "motion."

4. **B, f, m, p, q, v** are pronounced as in English.

**C** before *e* or *i* sounds like *ch* in "chin"; elsewhere it is always like English *k*: as *cima*, "top"; *cóme*, "how"; *dólce*, "sweet." **G** before *e* or *i* sounds like *g* in "gem"; elsewhere it is always like *g* in "go": as *gatto*, "cat"; *gênte*, "people"; *spingi*, "push."

*a.* A *cc* or a *gg* before *e* or *i* has merely the sound of *ch* in "chin" or *g* in "gem" prolonged: as *facce*, "faces"; *légge*, "law."

**D, l, n, t** are pronounced further forward in the mouth than in English; the tip of the tongue should touch the back of the upper front teeth: as *alto*, "high"; *dato*, "given"; *luna*, "moon"; *nudo*, "naked"; *tuòno*, "thunder."

**H** is always silent: as *ahi*, "oh!" *ha*, "he has."

**I**, unaccented, before a vowel, sounds like English *y*: as *iéri*, "yesterday"; *paio*, "pair"; *più*, "more." In the groups *cia*, *cio*, *ciu*, *gia*, *gio*, *giu*, an unaccented *i* serves only to show that the *c* or *g* is soft: as *faccia*,



"face"; *guancia*, "cheek"; *ciò*, "that"; *giù*, "down"; *mangia*, "eat"; *raggio*, "ray."

**J** is merely another way of writing *i*.

**N** before a *q* or a hard *c* or *g* has the sound of English *ng*: as *banca* (*bang-ka*), "bank"; *dunque* (*dung-kwe*), "therefore"; *lungo* (*lung-go*), "long."

**R** is always rolled, the point of the tongue vibrating against the teeth: as *caro*, "dear"; *rosso*, "red"; *per*, "for." When *r* is double or followed by a consonant, the trill is prolonged: as *carro*, "cart"; *burro*, "butter"; *marrone*, "chestnut"; *carne*, "meat"; *pôrta*, "door."

**S** is generally pronounced nearly like English *s* in "see," but with a somewhat sharper sound: as *sô*, "I know"; *spillo*, "pin."

Initial *s* before a sonant (*b, d, g, l, m, n, r, v*) has a sound intermediate between *s* and English *z*: as *sdrucchiolare*, "to slip"; *slitta*, "sleigh."

A single *s* between vowels has, in most words, the sound of English *z*: as *caso*, "case"; *causa*, "cause"; *viso*, "face." But in the following cases it is pronounced like *s* in "see," "mason": —

*a.* In *ásino*, *casa*, *Chiusi*, *côsa*, *così*, *desidèrio*, *naso*, *parasito*, *pêso*, *Pisa*, *pisello*, *pôsa*, *ripôso*, *riso*, *susina*, and their derivatives, and in many uncommon words.

*b.* After the prefixes *de-*, *di-*,\* *pre-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *ri-*, *tra-*\*: as *desistere*, *diségno*, *presumere*, *proseguire*, *reservare*, *risolvere*, *trasudare*.

*c.* In the adjective ending *-ôso* and the adjective and substantive ending *-ése*: as *noiôso*, "troublesome"; *inglêse*, "English"; *mêse*, "month." But in *cortése*, *francése*, *lucchèse*, *marchése*, *paêse*, *palêse*, the *s* is like English *z*.

---

\* Not to be confounded with *dis-*, *tras-*: *disonóre*, *trasandare*.

*d.* In the preterites and past participles of *chiudere*, *chiudere*, *nascondere*, *pörre*, *rädere*, *ridere*, *rimanere*, *rispondere*, *rödere*, and all verbs in *-endere*; and in their compounds and derivatives: as *chièsi*, *socchiuso*, *nascoße*, *rispósero*, *rasóio*, *rimase*, *corrispósi*, *rósero*, *accési*, *résó*, *scésa*. Exceptions to this rule are *deridere*, verbs in *-clüdere*, and derivatives of *rödere*.

**U**, unaccented, before a vowel, sounds like English *w*: as *buòno*, "good"; *guardare*, "to look"; *può*, "he can."

**Z** and **zz** are generally pronounced like a long and vigorous *ts*: as *alzare*, "to lift"; *azióne*, "action"; *prézzo*, "price"; *zío*, "uncle."

In the following cases, however, *z* and *zz* sound like a prolonged *dz*:—

*a.* In *azzurro*, *dozzina*, *mèzzo*, *pranzo*, *ribrézzo*, *romanzo*, *zélo*, and many less common words.

*b.* In verbs in *-izzare* (as *utilizzare*, "to utilize"); except *attizzare*, *dirizzare*, *guizzare*, *rizzare*, *stizzare*, and their compounds, and a few uncommon words.

**5.** The following combinations are to be noted:—

**Ch** (used only before *e* and *i*) is always like English *k*: as *fichi* (plural of *fico*, "fig"). **Sch** is like *sk*: as *schérzo*, "sport."

**Gh** (used only before *e* and *i*) is always like English *g* in "go": as *aghi* (plural of *ago*, "needle").

**Gl** (written *gl* if the following vowel be *i*) is nearly like English *lli* in "million": as *figlio*, "son"; *figli*, "sons." But in *Ánglia*, *geroglífico*, *glicerina*, *negligere* and its derivatives, and a few uncommon words borrowed from the Greek or Latin, *gl* is like English *gl*.

**Gn** is nearly like *ni* in "onion": as *ógni*, "every."

**Qu** is always like *kw*: as *quésto*, "this."

**5c** before *e* and *i* is nearly like *sh* in "ship": as *uscire*, "to go out." Before all other letters it is pronounced *sk*: as *scuôla*, "school"; *schérno*, "contempt."

**6.** Every letter in Italian is distinctly and separately sounded; the only exceptions are *h*, silent *i* (see **4**), and the combinations mentioned in **5**. Ex.: *arte*, "art"; *firma*, "signature"; *furto*, "theft"; *giórno*, "day"; *vêrso*, "toward"; *andái*, "I went"; *âura*, "breeze"; *bugîe*, "lies"; *Eurôpa*, "Europe"; *miêi*, "my"; *paúra*, "fear"; *sentiî*, "I felt"; *suôi*, "his."

Where a double consonant is written, both letters must be sounded, the first at the end of the preceding, the second at the beginning of the following syllable: as *anno*, "year"; *babbo*, "father"; *fatto*, "done"; *mésso*, "put"; *quéllo*, "that." For *rr*, *zz*, and soft *cc* and *gg*, see **4**.

*L*, *m*, *n*, and *r*, when preceded by an accented vowel and followed by another consonant, are prolonged: as *alto* (*all-to*), "high"; *sempre* (*sêmm-pre*), "always"; *tanto* (*tann-to*), "so much"; *parte* (*parr-te*), "part."

**7.** The accent is nearly always the same as in Latin. In this book it will always be noted. Of the signs written here, students are to use only the grave (`), which is placed on the last syllable of oxytones and on some monosyllables; Italian writers do not agree as to the use of the other marks.

**8.** Italian words are divided in such a way that, if possible, every syllable shall begin with a consonant: as *ta-vo-lî-no*, "table"; *frat-tân-to*, "meanwhile"; *al-l' uô-mo*, "to the man"; *nar-râ-re*, "to relate"; *mêz-zo*, "half"; *câc-cia*, "hunt"; *ôg-gi*, "to-day."

In the groups *s* + consonant, consonant + *r*, those mentioned in §, and *cl*, *fl*, *gl*, *pl*, both consonants belong to the following syllable. *I = y* and *u = w* go with the following vowel; *di*, *du*, *ei*, *eu*, *oi* are not separated. Ex.: *al-l' du-ra*, *a-vrò*, *bi-sò-gno*, *ca-stì-ghi*, *del-l' àc-qua*, *in-chiò-stro*, *mièi*, *mi-gliò-re*, *ri-flèt-te-re*, *te-à-tro*, *tudi*.

## ARTICLES.

9. The article is not declined, but it agrees with its substantive in gender and number.

### THE DEFINITE ARTICLE.

#### 10. Masculine :—

*a*. Sing. *il*, pl. *i*, before a word beginning with any consonant except *s* impure\* and *z*.

*b*. Sing. *lo*, pl. *gli*, before a vowel or *s* impure or *z*.†

Before a vowel *lo* becomes *l'*; *gli* becomes *gl'* before *i*.

Ex.: *Il pàdre*, the father; *i pàdri*, the fathers.

*Lo stèsso pàdre*, the same father.

*Lo scidme*, the swarm; *gli scidmi*, the swarms.

*Lo zio*, the uncle; *gli zti*, the uncles.

*L' uòmo*, the man; *gl' insètti*, the insects.

#### 11. Feminine :—

Sing. *la*, pl. *le*.

Before a vowel *la* becomes *l'*; *le* becomes *l'* before *e*.

Ex.: *La mādre*, the mother; *le mādri*, the mothers.

*L' òra*, the hour; *le òre*, the hours; *l' èrbe*, the herbs.

---

\* That is, *s* followed by another consonant.

† *Li* is sometimes used for *gli*. Some writers use *il*, *i* before *s* and before *sce-* or *sci-*.

12. When the definite article is preceded by one of the prepositions *di, da, a, in, con, su, per*, the article and preposition are generally contracted into one word, as shown in the following table (*con, per* are often uncontracted) :—

|                   | IL         | I                        | LO            | GLI            | LA            | LE            | L'            |
|-------------------|------------|--------------------------|---------------|----------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| <i>Di</i> , of    | <i>del</i> | <i>dèi</i> or <i>dè'</i> | <i>dèllo</i>  | <i>dègli</i>   | <i>dèlla</i>  | <i>dèlle</i>  | <i>dell'</i>  |
| <i>Da</i> , by    | <i>dal</i> | <i>dài</i> or <i>da'</i> | <i>dàllo</i>  | <i>dàgli</i>   | <i>dàlla</i>  | <i>dàlle</i>  | <i>dall'</i>  |
| <i>A</i> , to     | <i>al</i>  | <i>di</i> or <i>a'</i>   | <i>dlo</i>    | <i>dgli</i>    | <i>dlla</i>   | <i>dlle</i>   | <i>all'</i>   |
| <i>In</i> , in    | <i>nel</i> | <i>nèi</i> or <i>ne'</i> | <i>nèllo</i>  | <i>nègli</i>   | <i>nèlla</i>  | <i>nèlle</i>  | <i>nell'</i>  |
| <i>Con</i> , with | <i>col</i> | <i>còi</i> or <i>co'</i> | <i>còllo</i>  | <i>cògli</i>   | <i>còlla</i>  | <i>còlle</i>  | <i>coll'</i>  |
| <i>Su</i> , on    | <i>sul</i> | <i>súi</i> or <i>su'</i> | <i>sùllo</i>  | <i>sùgli</i>   | <i>sùlla</i>  | <i>sùlle</i>  | <i>sull'</i>  |
| <i>Per</i> , for  | <i>pel</i> | <i>pèi</i> or <i>pe'</i> | <i>per lo</i> | <i>per gli</i> | <i>per la</i> | <i>per le</i> | <i>per l'</i> |

Ex. : *Del pàdre*, of the father ; *dài pàdri*, by the fathers.

*Allo spècchio*, to the mirror ; *nègli spècchi*, in the mirrors.

*Còlla mádre*, with the mother ; *còlle mádri*, with the mothers.

*Sull' uòmo*, on the man ; *per gli uòmini*, for the men.

a. The word "some" is frequently rendered in Italian by *dì* with the definite article. This is called the partitive genitive.

Ex. : *Dàtemi del vîno*, give me some wine.

*Dèlle bèlle còse*, some fine things.

13. In the following cases the definite article is used in Italian, though not in English :—

a. Before the possessive pronouns : as *il nòstro giardino*, "our garden" ; *i suòi fratèlli*, "his brothers." When, however, the possessive qualifies an otherwise unmodified noun in the singular expressing relationship, the article is generally omitted : as *mia mádre*, "my mother." For a fuller statement see 45, a.

b. Before an abstract noun or one denoting a whole class.

Ex. : *L' uòmo propòne*, man proposes.

*I fióri ndscono dal sème*, flowers spring from the seed.

*Gli uccèlli hánno le dli*, birds have wings.

*La mòrte è il peggióre déi mli*, death is the worst of evils.

c. In general before a noun used with any adjective that does not express quantity.

Ex. : *L' dnno scórso*, last year ; *gli uòmini buòni*, good men.

*Il pòvero Luigi non viène*, poor Lewis doesn't come.

d. Before a title followed by a proper name : as *la regina Vittòria*, "Queen Victoria" ; *il signór Brúni*, "Mr. Brown."

e. Before family names ; often before given names of women ; occasionally before given names of well-known men.

Ex. : *Il Bidnchi è mòrto*, White is dead ; *la Patti cànta*, Patti sings.

*Conòsco l' Olìvia*, I know Olivia ; *Dànte* or *il Dànte*, Dante.

f. Before names of countries and continents : as *la Svìzzera*, "Switzerland" ; *all' Itàlia*, "to Italy" ; *per l' Euròpa*, "for Europe." But the article is omitted after *in* in phrases that denote going to or dwelling in a country, and often after *di* when *di* with the name of a country is equivalent to an adjective of nationality : as *vádo in Germània*, "I go to Germany" ; *rimángo in Frància*, "I remain in France" ; *la regina d' Inghiltèrra*, "the queen of England" ; *il vïno di Spàgna*, "the wine of Spain."

In all the above cases (beginning with 13, a) the article, unless it would be employed in English, is omitted when the noun is used as a vocative or is modified by a numeral or a pronominal adjective.

Ex. : a. *Questa sua òpera*, this work of his.

b. *Vi sòno sette virtù*, there are seven virtues.

c. *Pòvero pàdre*, poor father !

d. *Signóra Mònti, còme sta*, Mrs. Monti, how do you do ?

e. *Quel Nèri è maldto*, that Black is ill.

f. *Itàlia, ti rivèdo*, Italy, I see thee again.

- g. *Vièni, amico mio*, come, my friend.  
 h. *Ha parecchi vizii*, he has several bad habits.  
 i. *Due bellissimi cani*, two very fine dogs.

### THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE.

#### 14. Masculine :—

- a. *Un* before a vowel or any consonant except *s* impure and *z*.  
 b. *Uno* before *s* impure or *z*. \*

Ex. : *Un padre*, a father ; *un uomo*, a man.  
*Un anello*, a ring ; *uno specchio*, a mirror.  
*Uno sciame*, a swarm ; *uno zio*, an uncle.

#### 15. Feminine :—

*Una*, which becomes *un'* before a vowel.

Ex. : *Una madre*, a mother ; *un' ora*, an hour.

16. In the following cases the indefinite article, though expressed in English, is omitted in Italian :—

a. Before a predicate noun expressing occupation, rank, or nationality, and not accompanied by an adjective.

Ex. : *Egli è poeta*, he is a poet ; *sòno marchese*, I am a marquis.  
*Sitte italiano*, you are an Italian.

b. Generally before an antecedent (of a relative clause) used in apposition to a preceding noun modified by a definite article or a demonstrative pronoun.

Ex. : *L' Arno, fiume che traversa Firenze*, the Arno, a river which traverses Florence.

c. After *da* meaning "as," "like," or "for." See 79, g.

Ex. : *Da uomo*, like a man.

---

\* Some writers use *un* before *z* and before *sce-* or *sci-*.

## EXERCISE 1.

La p rte pi   lta del n stro c rpo   il c po. Il c po   attacc to  
*highest is is attached*  
 al c llo, e il c llo   attacc to al tr nco. La p rte dav nti del  
*front*  
 c po si ch ma viso. Nel viso ci s no la fr nte, gli  cchi, il  
*is-called there are eyes*  
 n so, la b cca, il m nto. C gli  cchi si v dono le c se. Col  
*we-see things*  
 n so si s ntono gli od ri. C lla b cca si m ngia, si b ve, si  
*we-smell odors we-eat we-drink we-*  
 respira. Respir re   mand re l' ria gi  nel p tto, e p i riman-  
*breathe*  
 d rla fu ri. N i respiri mo l' ria. Lev te un p sce dall'  cqua,  
*it We breathe Take*  
 mu re : lev te l' ria a n i, e n i morr mo.  
*it-dies take from us shall-die.*

## EXERCISE 2.

Mr. Rossi is a merchant. Leaving Italy, he-went-away last  
*  Lasci ndo parti*  
 year to France, a country which he-wished to-visit with his brother  
*per vol va visit re*  
 and a friend of the family. But he-returned to Italy the same  
*torn  in*  
 month, saying : "Travelling<sup>1</sup> bores-me. Another time I-shall-make  
*dic ndo viaggi re (m.) mi s cca Un'  ltra far *  
 a study of the customs of France. Paris is a big city ; we-have-  
*cost mi (m. pl.) grande vi abbiamo*  
 seen some<sup>2</sup> fine things ; but I-prefer the land of Garibaldi and  
*ved to b lle c se (f. pl.) mi pi ce pi *  
 of King Victor Emmanuel."

<sup>1</sup> See 13, b.<sup>2</sup> See 12, a.

## NOUNS.

17. Italian nouns are not declined. Possession is denoted by the preposition *di* : as *lo sp cchio di mio p dre*, "my father's looking-glass."



**GENDER.**

**18.** There are no neuter nouns in Italian.\*

Nouns denoting males and females keep their natural gender, whatever their termination may be : except *guida*, "guide" ; *guardia*, "guard" ; *persóna*, "person" ; *sentinella*, "sentinel" ; *spia*, "spy" ; which are feminine.

Ex. : *Il fratello*, the brother ; *mia sorella*, my sister.

*Il poeta*, the poet ; *la poetessa*, the poetess.

*Una spia*, a spy ; *la nostra guida*, our guide.

**19.** Of nouns denoting objects without sex some are masculine, some feminine. Their gender can often be determined by the final letter. All Italian nouns end in *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, or *u* : † —

*a.* Those ending in *a* are feminine ; except *colèra*, "cholera," *qualcosa*, "something," Greek neuters in *-ma*, ‡ many geographical names, and a few other words, mostly foreign.

Ex. : *Un' ora*, an hour ; *un telegramma*, a telegram.

*Il Canada*, Canada ; *il sofà*, the sofa.

*b.* Of those ending in *e* and *i* some are masculine, some feminine. All ending in *-zione*, *-gione*, or *-udine* are feminine.

Ex. : *Il fiume*, the river ; *la pace*, peace.

*Un dì*, a day ; *una metropoli*, a metropolis.

*La ragione*, the reason ; *la servitùdine*, service.

*c.* Those ending in *o* are masculine ; except *máno*, "hand."

Ex. : *Il ginocchio*, the knee ; *la máno*, the hand.

\* Latin neuters become masculine in Italian ; masculines and feminines retain their Latin gender. This rule has very few exceptions.

† A few foreign nouns used in Italian end in a consonant : as *lápiz*, "pencil" (*i lápiz*, "the pencils"). Nouns in *-o* or *-e* often drop that vowel if the preceding consonant is *l*, *n*, or *r* : as *cdne* = *can*, "dog."

‡ Mostly scientific terms.

*d.* Those ending in *u* are feminine ; except *soprappiù*, "surplus," and a few foreign words.

Ex. : *La virtù*, virtue ; *il bambù*, bamboo.

**20.** Any other part of speech (except an adjective\*) used as a noun must be masculine.

Ex. : *Il viaggiare*, travelling.

**21.** Masculine names of trees in *o* or *e* have a feminine form in *a* or *e* respectively, denoting their fruit ; but *il dattero*, "date," *il fico*, "fig," *il limone*, "lemon," *il pomo*, "apple," are always the same, whether denoting the tree or the fruit.

Ex. : *Un susino*, a plum-tree ; *una susina*, a plum.

*Il nocce*, the walnut-tree ; *la nocce*, the walnut.

*Questi fichi*, these fig-trees, these figs.

## NUMBER.

**22.** Feminines in unaccented *a* form their plural by changing *a* into *e*.

Ex. : *La strada*, the street ; *le strade*, the streets.

*Una bugia*, a lie ; *le bugie*, lies.

*a.* Feminines in *-ca* and *-ga* form their plural in *-che* and *-ghe* respectively (the *h* being inserted merely to indicate that the *c* and *g* keep their hard sound).

Ex. : *Un' oca*, a goose ; *molte oche*, many geese.

*La bottega*, the shop ; *parecchie botteghe*, several shops.

---

\* Adjectives of course have the gender of the nouns they represent.

b. Nouns in unaccented *-cia* and *-gia* form their plural in *-ce* and *-ge* respectively.\*

Ex.: *La guancia*, the cheek; *le guance*, the cheeks.  
*Una ciliegia*, a cherry; *tante ciliege*, so many cherries.

23. Masculines in unaccented *a* and all nouns in unaccented *o* and *e* (not *ie*) form their plural in *i*.†

Ex.: *Un poeta*, a poet; *due poeti*, two poets.  
*Lo zio*, the uncle; *gli zii*, the uncles.  
*La mano*, the hand; *le mie mani*, my hands.  
*Un mese*, a month; *tre mesi*, three months.  
*La cornice*, the frame; *quattro cornici*, four frames.

a. Masculines in *-ca* and *-ga* form their plural in *-chi* and *-ghi* respectively.

Ex.: *Il monarca*, the monarch; *i monarchi*, the monarchs.  
*Il collega*, the colleague; *i colleghi*, the colleagues.

b. Nouns in unaccented *-io* form their plural by changing *-io* to *-i* (often written *i*, *j*, or *ii*).

Ex.: *Lo specchio*, the mirror; *gli specchi*, the mirrors.  
*Il ciliegio*, the cherry-tree; *i ciliegi*, the cherry-trees.

c. Nouns in *-go* form their plural in *-ghi*. Nouns in *-co* form their plural in *-chi* if the penult is accented, otherwise in *-ci*.

Ex.: *Il castigo*, the punishment; *i castighi*, the punishments.  
*Un catalogo*, a catalogue; *due cataloghi*, two catalogues.  
*Il fico*, the fig; *cinque fichi*, five figs.  
*Antico*, ancient; *gli antichi*, the ancients.  
*Un medico*, a doctor; *sei medici*, six doctors.

This rule has a number of exceptions. In the following lists, words whose irregular plural is rare are omitted.

---

\* *Provincia* has *province*. In general borrowed words and words whose plural is necessarily very rare keep the *i*: *audacia*, *audacie*.

† In old Italian and in poetry words in *-ello* and *-ale* often form their plural in *-egli* or *-ei*, *-agli* or *-ai*: *capello*, *capèi*.

(1) Compound nouns in *-logo* denoting persons engaged in the sciences, and all compound nouns in *-fago* form their plural in *-gi*.\*

Ex. : *Il fisiòlogo*, the physiologist ; *i fisiòlogi*, physiologists.  
*Antropòfago*, cannibal ; *antropòfagi*, cannibals.

(2) The following words form their plural in *-ci*, although the penult is accented : —

amíco                  grêco                  inimíco                  nemíco                  pôrco †

*Grêco* has a regular plural in the expression *vini grêchi*.

(3) The following words form their plural in *-chi*, although the penult is unaccented : —

|             |            |          |           |           |
|-------------|------------|----------|-----------|-----------|
| ábbaco      | fármaco    | lástrico | rammárico | stráscico |
| acròstico   | índaco     | mánico   | rísico    | tòssico   |
| cárico †    | intònaco   | párroco  | sciático  | tráffico  |
| diméntico ‡ | intrínseco | pízzico  | stòmaco   | válico §  |

*Acròstico* and *fármaco* have also regular plurals.

d. Some masculines in *o* have an irregular plural in *a* ; this plural is feminine. They are : *centináio*, "hundred" ; *migliáio*, "thousand" ; *miglio*, "mile" ; *páio*, "pair" ; *uòvo*, "egg."

Many masculines in *o* have this irregular feminine plural in *a* besides the regular masculine plural in *i*. The most common are : *bráccio*, "arm" ; *díto*, "finger" ; *frútto*, "fruit" ; *ginòcchio*, "knee" ; *grído*, "shout" ; *lábbro*, "lip" ; *légno*, "wood" ; *mêmbro*, "member" ; *múro*, "wall" ; *oréccchio*, "ear" ; *òsso*, "bone."

\* Likewise the rare or obsolete words : *flemmagògo*, *idragògo*, *metallúrgo*, *sdrgo* (also reg. plur.), *sortilego*. "Magicians" = *mdghi*, "magi" = *mdgi*.

† Likewise the rare words : *aprico*, *lombrico* (also reg.), *uvamico*, *vico*.

‡ Likewise its compounds.

§ Likewise the rare or obsolete words : *fildeccico*, *mdntaco* (also reg.), *ostático*, *sfildeccico*, *stático* (noun), *úncico*.

Ex. : *Un páio*, a pair ; *sette páia*, seven pairs.

*Il mio bráccio*, my arm ; *le tue bráccia*, thy arms.

*Il lábbro*, the lip ; *le lábbra* or *i lábbri*, the lips.

*Un ósso*, a bone ; *le óssa* or *gli óssi*, the bones.

*Bráccio*, *ginóccchio*, *lábbro*, and *orécchio* nearly always have the irregular plural when denoting the two arms, knees, lips, or ears belonging to the same body.

24. All monosyllables, and all nouns ending in *i*, *ie*, *u*, an accented vowel, or a consonant, are invariable.

Ex. : *Il re*, the king ; *i re*, the kings.

*Il bríndisi*, the toast ; *i bríndisi*, the toasts.

*Úna spèce*, a kind ; *ótto spèce*, eight kinds.

*La virtù*, virtue ; *le virtù*, the virtues.

*Úna città*, a city ; *dièci città*, ten cities.

25. The following nouns have irregular plurals : *búe*, "ox," pl. *buòì* ; *díó*, "god," pl. *dèi* \* ; *móglie*, "wife," pl. *mógli* ; *uòmo*, "man," pl. *uòmini*.

### EXERCISE 3.

Gli uccèlli, le farfálle, i pésci, il cáne, il mício, le lucêrtole sóno<sup>1</sup> tútti animáli. Il gátto e il cáne sóno<sup>1</sup> animáli che hánno<sup>2</sup> quáttro gámbe, hánno<sup>3</sup> quáttro pièdi, e però si chiámano<sup>4</sup> quadrúpedi. Il leóne è<sup>1</sup> il più bèllo e il più maestóso déi quadrúpedi. Gli uccèlli hánno<sup>2</sup> dúe zámpe ; ed hánno<sup>3</sup> le áli e con le áli vólano.<sup>5</sup> Ánche le farfálle hánno<sup>2</sup> le áli, ánche le ápi hánno<sup>2</sup> le áli, e vólano.<sup>5</sup> Le mósche, le zanzáre, le vêspe, e pòi mólti áltri animálini, símili a quèsti, si chiámano<sup>4</sup> insètti. Gli uccèlli e gl' insètti náscono<sup>6</sup> dálle uòva. Tútti quèsti animáli vívono<sup>7</sup> in mèzzo all' ária. I pésci vívono<sup>7</sup> in mèzzo all' ácqua. I pésci non hánno<sup>2</sup> gámbe ; hánno<sup>3</sup> dálle párti quélle alettíne ; e con quèste píccole

---

\* The article used with *dèi* is *gli* : *gli dèi*.

alétte e con la códa nuôtano<sup>8</sup> e guízzan<sup>9</sup> vía nell' áqua, lèsti lèsti cóme un lámpo. Quélle alétte si chiámano<sup>4</sup> pínne. Le lucêtole stríscian<sup>11</sup> su' múri, hánno<sup>3</sup> délle zampíne, ma rasênti rasênti al còrpo, e quándo si muôvono<sup>10</sup> ánche súlla têrra, strísciano.<sup>11</sup> Le sêrpi non hánno<sup>2</sup> gámbe; e quésti animáli che non hánno<sup>2</sup> gámbe e che strísciano<sup>11</sup> sulla têrra, cóme le lucêtole e le sêrpi, si chiáman<sup>4</sup> rêttili.

<sup>1</sup> È = is; *sóno* = are. <sup>2</sup> Have. <sup>3</sup> They have. <sup>4</sup> *Si chidmano* = are called.

<sup>5</sup> They fly. <sup>6</sup> Are born. <sup>7</sup> Live. <sup>8</sup> They swim. <sup>9</sup> Dart. <sup>10</sup> *Si muôvono* = they move. <sup>11</sup> Crawl, they crawl.

EXERCISE 4.<sup>1</sup>

Mignonettes are<sup>2</sup> born from the seed. The seed, placed under ground, has<sup>3</sup> sprouted; from one side it-has<sup>3</sup> put-out<sup>4</sup> shoots, which have-spread-out<sup>5</sup> through<sup>6</sup> the ground, and from one side it-has<sup>3</sup> sent forth the stalk, the little-branches,<sup>7</sup> the leaves, and<sup>9</sup> the flowers. Like mignonettes,<sup>8</sup> many other<sup>26</sup> plants, herbs, and<sup>9</sup> flowers spring<sup>10</sup> from the seed. Flowers, herbs, grain, and trees are-called<sup>11</sup> vegetables. Vegetables have<sup>3</sup> roots, trunk, branches, twigs, leaves, flowers, and<sup>9</sup> fruit. Plants first produce<sup>12</sup> the flower and then the fruit. The trunk or stalk of plants is<sup>2</sup> that<sup>13</sup> which rests<sup>14</sup> on the roots and<sup>15</sup> comes<sup>16</sup> out from the ground;<sup>17</sup> it-is-covered<sup>18</sup> with<sup>19</sup> branches and with<sup>19</sup> leaves. Of the stalk of plants, — for instance, of the trunk of trees, — we-make-use<sup>20</sup> for many purposes; we-make<sup>21</sup> furniture, doors, windows, the beams that support<sup>22</sup> ceilings, ships, carriages, and<sup>9</sup> cars. The branches of trees are-burned,<sup>23</sup> and give-us<sup>24</sup> fire. Vegetables in-order-to<sup>25</sup> live have<sup>3</sup> need of earth, of water, and<sup>9</sup> of light.

<sup>1</sup> See 13, b. <sup>2</sup> Is = è; are = *sóno*. <sup>3</sup> Has, it has = *ha*; have = *hanno*.

<sup>4</sup> *Méso*. <sup>5</sup> *Si sóno distése*. <sup>6</sup> *Fra*. <sup>7</sup> *Ramicèlli*. <sup>8</sup> Insert "and so."

<sup>9</sup> Omit. <sup>10</sup> *Náscono*. <sup>11</sup> *Si chidmano*. <sup>12</sup> *Fánno*. <sup>13</sup> *Quéllo*. <sup>14</sup> *Pòsa*.

<sup>15</sup> Insert "which." <sup>16</sup> *Viène*. <sup>17</sup> Insert "and." <sup>18</sup> *Si ricudpre*. <sup>19</sup> *Di*.

<sup>20</sup> *Ci servidmo*. <sup>21</sup> *Faccidmo*. <sup>22</sup> *Réggono*. <sup>23</sup> *Si brúciano*. <sup>24</sup> *Ci*

*ddnno*. <sup>25</sup> *Per*. <sup>26</sup> Many other — *mólte áltre*.

## ADJECTIVES.

**26.** Adjectives agree with their substantives in gender and number. An adjective modifying two nouns of different genders is generally put in the masculine plural.

Ex.: *Il gatto è pulito*, the cat is neat; *stanze pulite*, neat rooms.  
*Una casa e un giardino bellini*, a pretty house and garden.

**27.** Numeral and pronominal adjectives and the commonest adjectives of size and quantity precede their nouns; adjectives of nationality, shape, and material follow; *bello*, *buono*, and adjectives whose use is prompted by emotion, generally precede. Otherwise, of the noun and adjective, the one that contains the chief idea comes last.

Ex.: *La seconda volta*, the second time; *questa volta*, this time.  
*Troppo pane*, too much bread; *le grandi città*, great cities.  
*Questa palla rotonda*, this round ball.  
*La buona madre*, the good mother; *pover' uomo*, poor man!  
*La vostra gentilissima lettera*, your kind letter.  
*È un uomo gentilissimo*, he is a kind man.

## GENDER AND NUMBER

**28.** Adjectives ending in *o* are masculine, and form their feminine in *a*. Adjectives in *e* are invariable in the singular.

Ex.: *Buono stivalotto*, good boot; *buona scarpa*, good shoe.  
*Ragazzo felice*, happy boy; *ragazza felice*, happy girl.

**29.** Adjectives form their plural in the same way as nouns (see **22**, **23**).

Ex.: *Sì buoni cassettoni*, six good bureaus; *otto buone seggiole*, eight good chairs.  
*Due uomini felici*, two happy men    *tre donne felici*, three happy women.

a. *Parécchi*, "several," has for its feminine *parécchie*.

b. *Qualche*, "some," is used only in the singular, even when the meaning is plural: as *qualche volta*, "sometimes."

c. When preceding a noun, *bèllo*, "beautiful," has forms similar to those of the definite article; and *Sánto*, "Saint," and *gránde*, "great," have corresponding forms in the singular.\* *Buòno*, "good," when preceding its noun, has a singular similar to the indefinite article. The masculine of these words (which is the only irregular part) is, therefore, as follows:—

Before any consonant except *s* impure or *z*: *bel*, *San*, *gran*, *buon*;  
pl. *bèi*, *Sánti*, *grándi*, *buòni*.

Before *s* impure or *z*: *bèllo*, *Sánto*, *gránde*, *buòno*; pl. *bègli*, *Sánti*,  
*grándi*, *buòni*.

Before a vowel: *bell'*, *Sant'*, *grand'*, *buon*; pl. *bègli*, *Sánti*, *grándi*,  
*buòni*.

When used *after* a noun or in the predicate these adjectives have their full forms (*bèllo*, *bèlli*, *Sánto*, *Sánti*, *gránde*, *grándi*, *buòno*, *buòni*).

Ex.: *Un bel quaddro*, a fine picture; *dúe bèi lètti*, two fine beds.

*Un bello scaffale*, a fine bookcase; *quattro bègli stivali*, four fine boots.

*Un bell' andito*, a fine hall; *mólti bègli orologi*, many fine clocks.

*Una bella stufa*, a fine stove; *parécchie belle tènde*, several fine curtains.

*Il palazzo è bello*, the palace is fine; *le sedie son belle*, the chairs are beautiful.

*San Pètro*, *Sánto Stèfano* e *Sant' Antònio*, St. Peter, St. Stephen, and St. Anthony.

*Un gran fucò*, a big fire; *grándi camini*, big fire-places.

---

\* *Gran* is, moreover, often used in the fem. sing. (for *gránde*), and sometimes in the plur. (for *grándi*); it is regularly used before fem. sing. nouns in *-e*, and in the expression *una gran bella* (or *brutta*) *còsa*.



*Il grande scaldino*, the big foot-warmer; *dieci grandi spilli*, ten big pins.

*Un grande sciame*, a great swarm; *il grande zupolo*, the large bung.

*Un grand' armadio*, a big wardrobe; *venti grandi alberi*, twenty big trees.

*Una grande camera*, a large bedroom; *cinque grandi finestre*, five big windows.

*Il salotto è molto grande*, the parlor is very large.

*Un buon lume*, a good lamp; *buoni fiammiferi*, good matches.

*Il buono sgabello*, the good stool; *nove buoni scolari*, nine good pupils.

*Il buon olio*, the good oil; *parecchi buoni aghi*, several good needles.

*Una buona cucina*, a good kitchen; *le buone candele*, the good candles.

*Il bambino è buono*, the child is good.

**30.** Any adjective of either gender or either number may be used as a noun.

Ex.: *I buoni*, the good; *la bella*, the beautiful woman.

### COMPARISON.

**31.** All Italian adjectives form their comparative by prefixing *più* "more," and their superlative by prefixing the definite article to the comparative. When the superlative immediately follows the noun, this article is omitted.

Ex.: *Bello*, beautiful; *più bello*, more beautiful; *il più bello*, the most beautiful.

*Lungo*, long; *più lungo*, longer; *il più lungo*, the longest.

*La via più corta*, the shortest way.

a. The following adjectives have an irregular comparison in addition to the regular one: —

*Alto*, high; *più alto* or *superiore*; *il più alto* or *il superiore*.

*Basso*, low; *più basso* or *inferiore*; *il più basso* or *l'inferiore*.

*Buono*, good; *più buono* or *migliore*; \* *il più buono* or *il migliore*.

*Cattivo*, bad; *più cattivo* or *peggiore*; \* *il più cattivo* or *il peggiore*.

*Grande*, big; *più grande* or *maggiore*; *il più grande* or *il maggiore*.

*Piccolo*, small; *più piccolo* or *minore*; *il più piccolo* or *il minore*.

“Higher” and “lower” are commonly rendered by *più alto* and *più basso*; *superiore* and *inferiore* generally mean “superior” and “inferior.” *Migliore* and *peggiore* are more used than *più buono* and *più cattivo*, which have the same sense. “Larger” and “smaller” are generally *più grande* and *più piccolo*; *maggiore* and *minore* usually signify “older” and “younger.”

Ex.: *Noi siamo migliori di loro*, we are better than they.

*Questa sala da pranzo è la più grande*, this dining-room is the biggest.

*Pietro è il fratello minore*, Peter is the youngest brother.

**32.** The adverb “less” is expressed by *méno*, “least” by *il méno*. “As . . . as,” “so . . . as” are *tanto . . . quanto*, *tanto . . . come*, *così . . . come*, or simply *quanto*.

Ex.: *Quella stanza è la meno bellina*, that room is the least pretty.

*Paolo non è tanto buono come Roberto*, Paul isn't so good as Robert.

*Giovanni è alto quanto Filippo*, John is as tall as Philip.

**33.** “Than” is *che*.

Ex.: *L'albergo è più grande che bello*, the hotel is bigger than it is beautiful.

But before a noun, a pronoun, or a numeral “than” is rendered by the preposition *di* (see 12). If, however, this “than” is preceded by a word meaning “rather,” it is translated *che*.

---

\* The adverbs “better” and “worse” are *méglio* and *peggio*.

Ex.: *Riccardo è peggiore di Guglielmo*, Richard is worse than William.

*Voi siete più ricchi di noi*, you are richer than we.

*Meno di cinque*, less than five.

*Piuttosto la morte che il disonore*, rather death than dishonor.

Before an inflected verb "than" is *che non* or *di quel che*.

Ex.: *Abbia più che non morde*, he **barks more** than he bites.

*Prometto meno di quel che do*, I promise less than I give.

**34.** "The more . . . the more," "the less . . . the less" are *più . . . più, meno . . . meno*. "More" and "less" after a number are *di più, di meno*. In speaking of time, "longer" after a negative is *più*.

Ex.: *Più studio, più imparo*, the more I study, the more I learn.

*Trenta giorni di meno*, thirty days less.

*Non lo vediamo più*, we see him no longer.

#### EXERCISE 5.

Il sole è<sup>1</sup> un globo grandissimo e sêmpre infocato: esso è<sup>1</sup> grande oltre un milione di volte più della terra; e dire<sup>2</sup> che a' nostri occhi apparisce<sup>3</sup> tanto più piccolo! Anche la luna, che splende<sup>4</sup> durante la notte, è<sup>1</sup> rotonda, ma è<sup>1</sup> molto più piccola della terra, e gira<sup>5</sup> intorno a questa<sup>6</sup> continuamente. La luna non ha<sup>1</sup> luce da sè, ma la riceve<sup>7</sup> dal sole. Ecco<sup>8</sup> perchè la luna ora la vediamo<sup>9</sup> e ora non la vediamo<sup>9</sup> più, ora ne vediamo<sup>9</sup> mezza, ora uno spicchio, ora un po' più, ora un po' meno, secondo che di essa ci si presenta<sup>10</sup> una parte maggiore o minore illuminata dal sole. Le stelle sono<sup>1</sup> tutti quei<sup>11</sup> punti luminosi che vediamo<sup>9</sup> brillare di<sup>12</sup> notte nel firmamento. Non crediate,<sup>13</sup> però, che le stelle siano<sup>1</sup> piccole come noi le vediamo<sup>9</sup>: ci paiono<sup>14</sup> così piccine per la smisurata distanza che corre<sup>15</sup> da loro a noi; ma le stelle sono<sup>1</sup> grandissime, e ce n'è di quelle<sup>16</sup> che sono<sup>1</sup> in-

finitamente più grandi del sóle. Gli è<sup>1</sup> che il sóle è<sup>1</sup> méno lontano di esse dálla tērra che nói abitiámo.<sup>17</sup>

<sup>1</sup> È = is; *sóno, stano* (subj.) = are; *ha* = has. <sup>2</sup> To think. <sup>3</sup> It seems. <sup>4</sup> Shines. <sup>5</sup> Turns. <sup>6</sup> It. <sup>7</sup> *La riceve* = receives it. <sup>8</sup> That is. <sup>9</sup> *Vedidmo* = we see; *la vedidmo* = we see it; *le vedidmo* = we see them; *ne vedidmo* = we see of it. <sup>10</sup> *Ci si presenta* = there presents itself to us. <sup>11</sup> Those. <sup>12</sup> At. <sup>13</sup> *Non credidte* = do not think. <sup>14</sup> *Ci pdiono* = they seem to us. <sup>15</sup> Intervenes. <sup>16</sup> *Ce n' è di quēlle* = there are some. <sup>17</sup> Inhabit.

## EXERCISE 6.

The moon is<sup>1</sup> in the middle of<sup>2</sup> the sky. The moon is<sup>1</sup> round; it-looks<sup>3</sup> perfectly round like a melon. And it-looks,<sup>3</sup> too, as big as a melon. The moon seems<sup>4</sup> little because it-is<sup>1</sup> far, far from us who are<sup>5</sup> on the earth. The moon renders<sup>6</sup> a great service to men: because when everything is<sup>1</sup> dark, it<sup>7</sup> illumines<sup>8</sup> with its beautiful light the earth which we-inhabit.<sup>9</sup> The stars are<sup>10</sup> larger than the moon, but to-look-at-them<sup>11</sup> they-seem<sup>12</sup> smaller, because they-are<sup>10</sup> so-much<sup>13</sup> further than the moon. The most beautiful,<sup>14</sup> the most intense<sup>14</sup> light comes<sup>15</sup> from the sun.

<sup>1</sup> È. <sup>2</sup> A. <sup>3</sup> *Par* or *pàre*. <sup>4</sup> *Si véde*. <sup>5</sup> *Sidmo*. <sup>6</sup> *Fa*. <sup>7</sup> *Éssa*. <sup>8</sup> *Rischidra*. <sup>9</sup> *Abitidmo*. <sup>10</sup> *Sóno*. <sup>11</sup> *A vedérle*. <sup>12</sup> *Pdiono*. <sup>13</sup> *Tánto*. <sup>14</sup> Both adjectives follow the noun. <sup>15</sup> *Viéne*.

## AUGMENTATIVES AND DIMINUTIVES; NUMERALS.

### AUGMENTATIVE AND DIMINUTIVE ENDINGS.

**35.** Instead of a word expressing size or quality the Italians often use a suffix. This suffix may be added to a noun, an adjective, or an adverb. When added to an adjective, and generally when added to a noun, it takes the gender of the word to which it is affixed: occasionally,

however, a suffix with masculine termination is added to a feminine noun, which thereby becomes masculine. A word loses its final vowel before a suffix; but the preceding consonant, if it be *c* or *g*, must keep its former quality: as *Cárlo* + *ino* = *Carlíno*, *vóce* + *óne* = *vocióne*, *pôco* + *ino* = *pochíno*, *adágio* + *ino* = *adagíno*.

*a.* The commonest ending is *-issimo* (fem. *-issima*), "very," which in general is added only to adjectives and adverbs. Adverbs in *-mente* add the *-issima* before the *-mente* (see 85). Any adjective may take it, and it is very often used in cases where it would be entirely superfluous in English.

Ex.: *Largo*, wide; *larghissimo*, very wide.

*Bène*, well; *benissimo*, very well.

*Grande*, big; *grandissimo*, very big.

— *Fa un tèmpo bellissimo*, it's beautiful weather.

*Bellissimamente*, very beautifully.

*b.* The principal suffix denoting bigness is *-óne*; it is always masculine, but has a rare feminine form, *-óna*.

Ex.: *Libro*, book; *libróne*, big book.

*Cása*, house; *casóne*, large house.

*Bòccia*, decanter; *boccióna*, big decanter.

*c.* The most important suffixes denoting smallness are *-ino*, *-cino*, *-icino*, *-étto*, *-éllo*, *-céllo*, *-icéllo*, *-aréllo*, *-eréllo*, *-òtto*, *-úccio*, *-úzzo*, *-uòlo*, with their fem. *-ina*, etc. These endings, especially *-úccio*, are often used to express affection; some of them may be used to express pity or contempt. *Ôtto* sometimes means "somewhat large" instead of "small."

Ex.: *Sorèlla*, sister; *sorellina*, little sister.

*Bèllo*, beautiful; *bellino*, pretty.

*Brútto*, ugly; *bruttino*, rather ugly.

*Piázza*, square; *piazzétta*, little square.

*Giòrgio*, George; *Giorgétto*, Georgie.

*Campana*, bell; *campanello*, little bell.  
*Aquila*, eagle; *aquilotto*, eaglet.  
*Casa*, house; *casotta*, rather large house.  
*Giovanni*, John; *Giovannuccio*, dear little Johnny.  
*Pazzo*, mad; *pazzarella*, poor mad woman.  
*Povero*, poor; *poverini*, poor things!

d. The ending *-uccio* denotes worthlessness.

Ex.: *Roba*, stuff, goods; *roba-uccio*, trash.

*Tempo*, weather; *tempo-uccio*, nasty weather.

*Alfredo*, Alfred; *Alfredo-uccio*, naughty Alfred.

**36.** Of the endings added to nouns *-ino* is by far the most common; the only ones that are freely used to form new compounds are *-ino*, "little," *-one*, "great," *-uccio*, "dear," and *-uccio*, "bad." In very many cases endings lose their character of independent suffixes, and become inseparable parts of certain words, whose meanings they often change: as *scala*, "stairway"; *scalino*, "stair"; *scalotto*, "ladder." Some suffixes (as *-uolo*) are rarely used except in this way. Others (as *-cino*, *-icino*, *-ello*, *-ello*, *-icello*, *-arello*, *-erello*) cannot be attached to any word at pleasure, their use being determined by precedent or euphony.

**37.** Sometimes several suffixes are added at once to the same word: as *ladro*, "thief"; *ladrone*, "terrible thief"; *ladroncello*, "terrible little thief."

## NUMERALS.

**38.** The cardinal numerals are:—

|                     |                    |                     |                          |
|---------------------|--------------------|---------------------|--------------------------|
| 1, <i>uno</i> .     | 5, <i>cinque</i> . | 9, <i>nove</i> .    | 13, <i>trèdici</i> .     |
| 2, <i>due</i> .     | 6, <i>sèi</i> .    | 10, <i>dîci</i> .   | 14, <i>quattordici</i> . |
| 3, <i>tre</i> .     | 7, <i>sette</i> .  | 11, <i>undici</i> . | 15, <i>quindici</i> .    |
| 4, <i>quattro</i> . | 8, <i>otto</i> .   | 12, <i>dodici</i> . | 16, <i>sèdici</i> .      |

|  |   |   |  |
|--|---|---|--|
| 17, <i>diciasétte.</i>                     | 26, <i>ventisèi.</i>                          | 50, <i>cinquánta.</i>                       | 125, <i>cento venti-<br/>cinque.</i>       |
| 18, <i>dicióttó.</i>                       | 27, <i>ventisétte.</i>                        | 60, <i>sessánta.</i>                        |  |
| 19, <i>diciannóve.</i>                     | 28, <i>ventióttó</i> or<br><i>vent' ótto.</i> | 70, <i>settánta.</i>                        | 200, <i>dugénto</i> or<br><i>duécénto.</i> |
| 20, <i>vénti.</i>                          | 29, <i>ventinóve.</i>                         | 80, <i>ottánta.</i>                         | 250, <i>dugénto cin-<br/>quánta.</i>       |
| 21, <i>ventúno</i> or<br><i>vent' úno.</i> | 30, <i>trénta.</i>                            | 90, <i>novánta.</i>                         | 300, <i>trecénto.</i>                      |
| 22, <i>ventidúe.</i>                       | 31, <i>trentúno</i> or<br><i>trent' úno.</i>  | 100, <i>cénto.</i>                          | 400, <i>quattrocénto.</i>                  |
| 23, <i>ventitrè.</i>                       | 32, <i>trentadúe.</i>                         | 101, <i>centúno</i> or<br><i>cent' úno.</i> | 1000, <i>mille.</i>                        |
| 24, <i>ventiquáttro.</i>                   | 40, <i>quaránta.</i>                          | 105, <i>centocinque.</i>                    | 2000, <i>dúe mila.</i>                     |
| 25, <i>venticínque.</i>                    |   | 115, <i>centoquindici.</i>                  |  |

*Úno* has a feminine *úna* ; when used adjectively *úno* has the same forms as the indefinite article. The plural of *mille* is *mila*. "A million" is *un milióné* or *millióné*, of which the plural is *milióni* or *millióni*.

(1) No conjunction is used between the different parts of a number : as *dugénto quaránta*, "two hundred and forty." No indefinite article is used before *cénto* and *mille* : as *cénto líbri*, "a hundred books."

(2) *Cénto*, *dugénto*, etc., when followed by another numeral of more than two syllables may lose the final syllable -to : as *seicénto cinquánta* or *seicencinquánta*, "six hundred and fifty."

(3) "Eleven hundred," "twelve hundred," etc., must be rendered *millecénto*, *mille dugénto*, etc. : as *mille ottocénto ottantasétte*, 1887.

(4) "Both," "all three," etc., are *tútti* (fem. *tútte*) *e dúe*, *tútti* (fem. *tútte*) *e tre*, etc.

a. If the noun modified by *ventúno*, *trentúno*, etc., follows the numeral, it should be in the singular ; if it precedes, in the plural.

Ex. : *Sessantúna lira* or *lire sessantúna*, 61 francs.

b. In dates the definite article is prefixed to the number representing the year, if that number follows a preposition, or does not follow the name of a month.

*quanto caso costa how much  
 hoppo caio = too clear*

## NUMERALS.

27

Ex. : *Nel mille ottocento ottantasette*, in 1887.

c. "What time is it?" is *che ora è?* "It is six," etc., is *sòno le sei*, etc., *ore* being understood. "One o'clock" is *il tòcco*.

Ex. : *Sòno le due e mèzzo*, it's half-past two.

*Sòno le tre e dièci*, it's ten minutes past three.

*Ci mancano venti minùti dle quattrò*, it's twenty minutes to four.

*Sòno le cinque mèno un quárto*, it's a quarter to five.

### 39. The ordinal numerals are :—

|                          |                                 |                                   |
|--------------------------|---------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1st, <i>primo</i> .      | 12th, <i>duodécimo</i> or       | 20th, <i>ventésimo</i> .          |
| 2d, <i>secóndo</i> .     | <i>décimo secóndo</i> .         | 21st, <i>ventésimo primo</i> or   |
| 3d, <i>térzo</i> .       | 13th, <i>tredicésimo</i> or     | <i>ventunésimo</i> .              |
| 4th, <i>quárto</i> .     | <i>décimo térzo</i> .           | 22d, <i>ventésimo secóndo</i>     |
| 5th, <i>quínto</i> .     | 14th, <i>quattordicésimo</i> or | or <i>ventiduésimo</i> .          |
| 6th, <i>sésto</i> .      | <i>décimo quárto</i> .          | 30th, <i>trentésimo</i> .         |
| 7th, <i>séttimo</i> .    | 15th, <i>quindicésimo</i> or    | 100th, <i>centésimo</i> .         |
| 8th, <i>ottávo</i> .     | <i>décimo quínto</i> .          | 101st, <i>centésimo primo</i> .   |
| 9th, <i>nòno</i> .       | 16th, <i>décimo sésto</i> .     | 115th, <i>centoquindicésimo</i> . |
| 10th, <i>décimo</i> .    | 17th, <i>décimo sétimo</i> .    | 200th, <i>ducentésimo</i> .       |
| 11th, <i>undécimo</i> or | 18th, <i>décimo ottávo</i> .    | 1000th, <i>millésimo</i> .        |
| <i>décimo primo</i> .    | 19th, <i>décimo nòno</i> .      | 2000th, <i>duemilésimo</i> .      |

All of them form their feminines and plurals like other adjectives in *o*.

Ex. : *Le settantésime quínte còse*, the 75th things.

a. Ordinal numerals are used after the words "book," "chapter," and the names of rulers ; but no article intervenes.

Ex. : *Carlo secóndo*, Charles the Second ; *Pio nòno*, Pius IX.

*Libro térzo*, Book the Third ; *capítolo quárto*, chapter four.

b. For the day of the month, except the first, a cardinal number is used.

Ex. : *Il dì cinque d' aprile* or *il cinque aprile*, the fifth of April.

*Il primo di maggio*, the first of May.



c. "A third," "a fourth," "a fifth," etc., are *un tèrzo, un quàrto, un quínto*, etc. "Half" is *la metà*; the adjective "half" is *mêzzo*.

40. "A couple" or "a pair" is *un páio*. "A dozen" is *una dozzina*. The expressions *una decina, una ventina, una trentina*, etc., *un centindio, un miglidio*, mean "about ten," "about twenty," etc. (see 23, d). "Once," "twice," etc., are *una vólta, due vólte*, etc.

Ex.: *Un páio di scarpe*, a pair of shoes.

*Una cinquantina di persóne*, some fifty persons.

*L'ho visto parecchie vólte*, I've seen it several times.

#### EXERCISE 7.

Con l'orològio si véde<sup>1</sup> che óre sóno.<sup>2</sup> Un giòrno è<sup>3</sup> ventiquátt' óre. Cêrte óre del giòrno è<sup>2</sup> lúme, cêrte óre è<sup>2</sup> búio. Un giòrno è<sup>3</sup> ventiquátt' óre, ma sùlla móstra dell' orològio, dèlle óre ce n'è<sup>4</sup> segnáte dódici, perchè le óre del giòrno si cóntano<sup>5</sup> dall' úna álle dódici, cosí: tòcco, dúe, tre, quáttro, cinque, sêi, sêtte, ôtto, nôve, diêci, úndici e dódici. Arriváti a dódici non si séguita<sup>6</sup> a díre trédici, quattórdici, e vía fino a ventiquáttro; ma si ricomíncia<sup>7</sup> da cápo dal tòcco e si arríva<sup>8</sup> fino a dódici. Il cónto tórna<sup>9</sup> lo stéssó: infátti le óre del giòrno son<sup>11</sup> ventiquáttro; e dódici e dódici, sommáti insiême, fórmáno<sup>10</sup> ventiquáttro. Dódici óre sóno<sup>11</sup> la metà del giòrno. L' orològio ha<sup>12</sup> dódici óre; e le ha<sup>13</sup> segnáte giro giro álla móstra. L' óra è<sup>3</sup> sessánda minúti; e l' orològio ségna<sup>14</sup> ánche i minúti. Quêlle righettíne tórno tórno álla móstra, fra un' óra e un' áltra, sóno<sup>11</sup> i sessánda minúti che fórmáno<sup>10</sup> l' óra. La lancétta gránde ségna<sup>14</sup> i minúti. La lancétta piccína ségna<sup>14</sup> le óre. La lancétta gránde ógni óra fa<sup>15</sup> il giro di tútti e sessánda i minúti; gíra<sup>16</sup> tútta la móstra. La lancétta piccína ógni óra ségna<sup>14</sup> un número, e a girár tútta la móstra ci métte<sup>17</sup> dódici óre, perchè dódici son<sup>11</sup> le óre segnáte sùlla mó-

stra. Óra sóno<sup>2</sup> le dódici; tütte e dúe le lancétte sóno<sup>11</sup> sülle dódici. Fra un' óra la lancétta gránde avrà<sup>18</sup> giráta tútta la móstra, e sarà<sup>19</sup> daccápo sul número 12, e la lancétta piccína sarà<sup>19</sup> sull' úno.

<sup>1</sup> *Si véde* = we see. <sup>2</sup> It is. <sup>3</sup> Is. <sup>4</sup> *Ce n' è* = there are. <sup>5</sup> *Si còntano* = are counted. <sup>6</sup> *Non si séguíta* = we don't go on. <sup>7</sup> *Si ricòntincia* = we begin over again. <sup>8</sup> *Si arriva* = we go. <sup>9</sup> Amounts to. <sup>10</sup> Make. <sup>11</sup> Are. <sup>12</sup> Has. <sup>13</sup> *Le ha* = it has them. <sup>14</sup> Marks. <sup>15</sup> Makes. <sup>16</sup> It goes around. <sup>17</sup> *Ci métte* = it takes. <sup>18</sup> Will have. <sup>19</sup> Will be.

## EXERCISE 8.

A year is<sup>1</sup> 365 days. Every seven days is<sup>1</sup> a week. The days of the week are-called<sup>2</sup>: Sunday, Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday, Saturday. Sunday<sup>3</sup> is<sup>1</sup> a<sup>4</sup> holiday; the other days we-work,<sup>5</sup> and therefore they-are-called<sup>2</sup> working-days. The year is-divided<sup>6</sup> into twelve months. The months are-called<sup>2</sup>: January, February, March, April, May, June, July, August, September, October, November, December. The month is<sup>1</sup> thirty or thirty-one days. When the month begins,<sup>7</sup> it-is-called<sup>8</sup> the first of the month; the second day is-called<sup>8</sup> the second of the month, the third, the third, and so-on<sup>9</sup> until the thirtieth or thirty-first. January, March, May, July, August, October, and<sup>4</sup> December have<sup>10</sup> thirty-one days. April, June, September, and<sup>4</sup> November have<sup>10</sup> thirty days. February is<sup>1</sup> the shortest month, because it-has<sup>11</sup> twenty-eight days only.<sup>12</sup> But every four years February has<sup>11</sup> twenty-nine days; and that<sup>16</sup> year is-called<sup>13</sup> leap-year. The year begins<sup>7</sup> from January; January is,<sup>1</sup> then,<sup>14</sup> the first month of the year. The year ends<sup>15</sup> with December; so<sup>14</sup> December is<sup>1</sup> the last month of the year.

<sup>1</sup> È. <sup>2</sup> *Si chidmano*. <sup>3</sup> Use def. article. <sup>4</sup> Omit. <sup>5</sup> *Si lavóra*. <sup>6</sup> *Si divíde*. <sup>7</sup> *Comincia*. <sup>8</sup> *Si díce*. <sup>9</sup> *Così*. <sup>10</sup> *Hánno*. <sup>11</sup> *Ha*. <sup>12</sup> *Sóli*. <sup>13</sup> *Si chidma*. <sup>14</sup> *Dúnque*. <sup>15</sup> *Fínisce*. <sup>16</sup> *Quell'*.

## DEMONSTRATIVE, INTERROGATIVE, RELATIVE, AND POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

**41.** For the indefinite pronouns, see **86-91**.

**42.** (1) The demonstrative pronouns used adjectively are *questo*, "this," and *quello* or *cotesto*, "that." *Cotesto* (spelled also *codesto*) is used of objects near the person addressed. *Questo* and *cotesto* are inflected like other adjectives; but they generally drop *o* before a vowel. *Quello* is inflected like *bello* (see **29, c**).

Ex.: *Quest' uomo*, this man; *queste ragazze*, these girls.  
*Quel bambino*, that infant; *quei fanciulli*, those children.  
*Quell' amico*, that friend; *quegli sposi*, that couple.  
*Quello zio*, that uncle; *quelle signore*, those ladies.

*Questo* and *quello* are also used substantively for "this," "that," "this one," "that one": as *fate questo*, *non fate quello*, "do this, don't do that."

(2) "This man" is translated by *questi*, "that man" by *quegli*, *quì*, or *cotesti* (rare); these words are invariable, refer only to persons, and are used only in the nominative singular. *Costui* and *colui* mean respectively the same as *questi* and *quegli*, but are not defective, having a feminine singular *costei*, *collei*, and a plural (both genders alike) *costoro*, *coloro*. *Costui* is often used in a depreciative sense.

Ex.: *Questi è francese e quegli è tedesco*, this man is French and that one is German.  
*Chi è costui*, who is this fellow?  
*Parlo di colui*, I speak of that man.

(3) *Ciò*, "this," "that," is invariable, and represents a whole idea, not a single word: as *ciò è véro*, "that's so."

*a. Quello* and *questo*, *quelli* and *questi* mean also "the former," "the latter."

*b. "He who"* is *colui che*, or simply *chi*. "The one who, whom, which," "that which," "what" is *quello che* or *quel che*.

Ex.: *Chi lavora* or *colui che lavora*, he who works.

*Quel che dico io*, the one I mean.

*A quel che sento*, from what I hear.

**43.** The interrogative "who," "whom," is *chi*. "What?" used substantively is *che*, *che cosa*, or *cosa*.\* "What?" used adjectively is *che* or *quale*. "Which?" is *quale*. *Quale* has a plural *quali*; *chi* and *che* are invariable. "How much?" is *quanto* (-a), "how many?" is *quanti* (-e).

Ex.: *Chi védo*, whom do I see?

*Di chi parlate*, of whom do you speak?

*Che cosa dice*, what does he say?

*Che* or *quali libri avete comprato*, what books did you buy?

*Quale di questi volumi è il primo*, which of these volumes is the first?

*a. The interrogative "whose" is di chi.*

Ex.: *Di chi è questo biglietto*, whose card is this?

*b. In exclamations "what a," "what," are rendered by che or quale without any article.*

Ex.: *Che bel paese*, what a beautiful country!

**44.** The principal relative pronouns are *che*, *cui*, *il quale*: they are all applied to both persons and things, and mean "who," "whom," "which," or "that." *Il quale* is inflected

---

\* *Cosa* (as *cosa dice*?) is generally avoided in written Italian.

(*la quäle, i quälì, le quälì*). *Che* and *cui* are invariable : in general *che* is used only as subject and direct object, *cui* only after prepositions or as indirect object.

- Ex. : *La lingua che si parla*, the language which we speak.  
*L' uòmo del quäle si tratta*, the man of whom we are speaking.  
*Le persòne a cui or alle quälì parlo*, the persons to whom I speak.  
*Lo scritto di cui parlo*, the work I am speaking of.  
*Ègli è colui, cui fu ddtò*, he is the man to whom it was given.

(1) As subject or direct object *che* is preferred to *il quäle*, unless clearness requires the latter.

(2) The relative "whose" is *il cui* or *del quäle*.

- Ex. : *Una signòra, il cui nòme è Lucia*, a lady whose name is Lucy.  
*Un uòmo, le cui figlie conosco*, a man whose daughters I know.  
*L' autòre, del cui libro si parla*, the author whose book we are speaking of.  
*Le chièse dèlle quälì si vèdono le cúpole*, the churches whose domes we see.

(3) The relative cannot be omitted in Italian.

- Ex. : *Le càse che ho compràte*, the houses I have bought.

a. "Such . . . as" is *tàle . . . quäle* ; in poetry *tàle* has a plural *tài* instead of *tàli*. "As much as" is *tànto quánto* ; "as many as" is *tànti quánti*.

- Ex. : *Quäle è il pàdre tale è il figlio*, as is the father, so is the son.

b. "He who" is *chi* or *colui che* (see 42, b).

- Ex. : *Chi ha la sanità è ricco*, he who has health is rich.

c. "Whoever" is *chiunque* ; "whatever" as a substantive is *tutto quel che* or *chechè*, as an adjective *quäle che, qualùnque che, qualùnque, per quánto*. These words, excepting *tutto quel che*, all take the subjunctive. *Chechè* is now but little used.

**Ex. :** *Chiunque sidte*, whoever you may be.  
*Checchè facciete, fátelo bène*, whatever you do, do it well.  
*Tutto quel che volete*, whatever you wish.  
*Quelli che siano i vostri motivi*, whatever your motives may be  
*Qualunque siano i suoi talenti*, whatever his talents may be.  
*In qualunque stato che io mi trovi*, in whatever condition I  
 may find myself.  
*Per quante ricchezze egli abbia*, whatever riches he may have.

#### 45. The possessive pronouns are :—

|                 |                     |                     |                         |                         |
|-----------------|---------------------|---------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| My :            | m., <i>il mio</i> , | f., <i>la mia</i> , | m. pl., <i>i miei</i> , | f. pl., <i>le mie</i> . |
| Thy :           | <i>il tuo</i> ,     | <i>la tua</i> ,     | <i>i tuoi</i> ,         | <i>le tue</i> .         |
| His, her, its : | <i>il suo</i> ,     | <i>la sua</i> ,     | <i>i suoi</i> ,         | <i>le sue</i> .         |
| Our :           | <i>il nostro</i> ,  | <i>la nostra</i> ,  | <i>i nostri</i> ,       | <i>le nostre</i> .      |
| Your :          | <i>il vostro</i> ,  | <i>la vostra</i> ,  | <i>i vostri</i> ,       | <i>le vostre</i> .      |
| Their :         | <i>il loro</i> ,    | <i>la loro</i> ,    | <i>i loro</i> ,         | <i>le loro</i> .        |

*Loro* is invariable ; the others agree with the object possessed : as *il mio naso*, "my nose" ; *la sua bocca*, "his, her mouth" ; *i vostri occhi*, "your eyes" ; *le loro labbra*, "their lips."

When the possessive stands alone in the predicate, the article is omitted if the possessive is used adjectively.

**Ex. :** *Questo cappello è mio*, this hat is mine.  
*Questo cappello è il mio*, this hat is mine (*i.e.*, the one that belongs to me).

*a.* The article (unless it might be used in English) is omitted before the possessive : (1) When a numeral, an adjective of quantity, or a demonstrative or interrogative adjective precedes it : as *due cani suoi*, "two dogs of his" (but *i due cani suoi*, "the two dogs of his" or "his two dogs") ; *molti miei amici*, "many friends of mine" (but *i molti miei amici*, "the many friends of mine" or "my many friends") ; *questo tuo difetto*, "this fault of thine." (2) When the possessive forms part of a title : as *Vostra Maestà*,

"Your Majesty"; *Sua Altezza*, "His Highness." (3) When the possessive modifies a noun used in the vocative (in this case the possessive generally follows its noun): as *amico mio*, "my friend!"

(4) The article is generally omitted also when the possessive precedes a noun in the singular expressing relationship: as *nostra madre*, "our mother." But if the noun has a diminutive ending, or an adjective precedes the noun, the article is not omitted: as *il tuo fratellino*, "thy little brother"; *la vostra gentilissima sorella*, "your kind sister." (5) The article is omitted also in certain phrases, such as: *da parte mia*, "for me"; *per amor mio*, "for my sake"; *in casa nostra*, "in our house"; *a modo suo*, "in his own way"; *è colpa vostra*, "it's your fault."

b. The possessive, when not necessary for clearness, is usually replaced by a definite article.

Ex.: *Come sta la mamma*, how is your mother?

*Ha perduto il giudizio*, he has lost his senses.

*Battono i piedi*, they stamp their feet.

c. When the name of the thing possessed is direct object of a verb, the Italians often use instead of the possessive a conjunctive personal pronoun (see 47) and a definite article. If the thing possessed be a part of the body or clothing, this construction is frequent, even when the name of the thing is not object of a verb.

Ex.: *Si strappa i capelli*, he tears his hair (lit., he tears to himself the hairs).

*Mi taglio il dito*, I cut my finger (I cut to myself the finger).

*Il cane gli agguantò la gamba*, the dog seized his leg (seized to him the leg).

*Mi duole il capo*, my head aches (to me aches the head).

d. When the possessor is not the subject of the sentence, "his," "her" are, for the sake of clearness, often rendered *di lui*, *di lei*: as *egli non conosce il di lei cuore*, "he does not know her heart."

e. "A . . . of mine, of thine," etc., is *un mio*, *un tuo*, etc.: as *una nostra cugina*, "a cousin of ours."

## EXERCISE 9.

Quándo cádde<sup>1</sup> l' impêro, Siêna soffrì<sup>2</sup> méno délle áltre città toscáne dälle invasióni déi bárbari; ma vénne<sup>3</sup> sótto la signoria déi Longobárdi, e pòi fu<sup>4</sup> úna délle città libere di Carlomagno, néi cónti e baróni del quále, arricchiti dälle têrre e daí castèlli che diêde<sup>5</sup> lóro<sup>6</sup> l' imperatóre, i nòbili senési crédono<sup>7</sup> trováre l' origine délla lóro nobiltà. Quésti ládri forestiêri, i cúi nidi néi dintórni di Firênze i cidadíni di quèsto comúne cercávano<sup>8</sup> di distrúggere, abbandonárono<sup>9</sup> volontariaménte i lóro castèlli nel território senése, ed entrárono<sup>10</sup> nélla città, che da éssi e daí véscovi veniva<sup>4</sup> abbellíta di grándi palázzi e governáta con úna máno di fêrro, finchè<sup>11</sup> i comúni non<sup>11</sup> si levárono<sup>12</sup> e non<sup>11</sup> févero<sup>13</sup> prevalére il lóro dirítto a partecipáre nélla còsa púbblica.

- <sup>1</sup> Fell. <sup>2</sup> Suffered. <sup>3</sup> It came. <sup>4</sup> Was. <sup>5</sup> Gave. <sup>6</sup> To them. <sup>7</sup> Think, believe. <sup>8</sup> Were trying. <sup>9</sup> Abandoned. <sup>10</sup> Entered. <sup>11</sup> *Finchè non* = until. <sup>12</sup> *Si levarono* = arose. <sup>13</sup> Made.

## EXERCISE 10.

Charles V made<sup>1</sup> of Siena a fief for his son Philip II, who ceded-it<sup>2</sup> to Cosimo I, and the latter built-there<sup>3</sup> the fort which the Spaniards had-tried-to<sup>4</sup> construct. The city remained<sup>5</sup> under the rule of the good dukes of Lorraine, until Napoleon made-it<sup>6</sup> capital of the department of the Ombrone. After the fall of the emperor, it-returned<sup>7</sup> under the dominion of the dukes. In<sup>8</sup> 1860 it-was<sup>9</sup> the first Tuscan city that voted<sup>10</sup> the union of Italy under Victor Emmanuel II, the only honest king of whom history speaks.<sup>11</sup>

- <sup>1</sup> *Féce.* <sup>2</sup> *La cedette.* <sup>3</sup> *Vi fabbricò.* <sup>4</sup> *Avévano voluto.* <sup>5</sup> *Restò.* <sup>6</sup> *La féce.* <sup>7</sup> *Ritornò.* <sup>8</sup> See 38, b. <sup>9</sup> *Fu.* <sup>10</sup> *Votásse.* <sup>11</sup> *Parli*, which should precede its subject.



## PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

**46.** Personal pronouns are divided into two classes, conjunctive and disjunctive: the conjunctive forms are those used as direct object of a verb, and as indirect object without a preposition; the disjunctive forms are those used as subject of a verb, and as object of a preposition.

Ex.: *ÉGLI* ve lo *dà* *per* ME.  
He to you it gives for me.

## CONJUNCTIVE FORMS.

**47.** Conjunctive pronouns are always unaccented, and cannot be separated from the verb, which they sometimes follow but oftener precede, as will be explained in **48**.

They are used only as direct object of a verb or as indirect object without a preposition. The forms are:—

*Mi*, me, to me.

*Ti*, thee, to thee.

*Ci*, us, to us.\*

*Vi*, you, to you.

*Si* (reflexive), himself, to himself; herself, to herself; itself, to itself.

*Si* (reflexive), themselves, to themselves.

*Lo*, him; \* *gli*, to him.†

*La*, her; *le*, to her.

*Li*, them (masc.); *loro*, to them.‡

*Le*, them (fem.); *loro*, to them.

“It” must be rendered by a masculine or feminine form, according to the gender of the noun it represents. “It” representing not a word, but a whole clause, is *lo*.‡

Ex.: *Mi conósce*, he knows me; *ti do i libri*, I give thee the books.

*Ci vedéte*, you see us; *vi dico tutto*, I tell you everything.

*Si veste*, he dresses himself; *si divertono*, they amuse themselves.

\* In old Italian and in poetry *ne* is often used for *ci*, and *il* for *lo*.

† In conversation *li* is often used for *gli*, and *gli* or *li* for *loro*.

‡ In certain idiomatic phrases *la* represents an indefinite object: as *pagarla cara*, “to pay dearly for it.”

*Ècco l'oro: ve lo do*, here's the gold: I give it to you.

*Ècco la palla: la vedo*, here's the ball: I see it.

*Come poteva sapere se io veniva o no? — Lo ha indovinato.* —

"How could he tell whether I was coming or not?" "He guessed it."

(1) It will be seen that the third person (not reflexive) has different forms for the direct and the indirect object.

Ex.: *Lo trovai*, I found him; *gli feci un regalo*, I made him a present; *la lascia*, he leaves her; *le scrive*, he writes to her. *Li cercate*, you seek them (masc.); *le salutate*, you greet them (fem.); *mandiamo loro mille saluti*, we send them (masc. or fem.) a thousand greetings.

(2) The reflexive pronouns of the first and second persons are *mi*, *ci*; *ti*, *vi*. All plural reflexive pronouns are used also as reciprocal pronouns.

Ex.: *Mi difendo*, I defend myself; *vi lavate*, you wash yourselves. *Si odiano*, they hate each other; *ci amiamo*, we love one another.

(3) Another conjunctive pronoun is *ne*,\* "of it," "of them"; it corresponds also to "any," "some" when these words mean "any, some of it," "any, some of them." It is often used pleonastically in Italian.

Ex.: *Ne parla*, he speaks of it; *ne ho*, I have some. *Non ne abbiamo*, we haven't any; *ne volete*, do you want any? *Tu ne approfitti di questa libertà*, you make good use of this liberty.

a. *Vi*, "you," and *ci* and *ne*, "us," are not distinguished by form nor position from the adverbs *vi*, *ci*, meaning "there," "here," "to it," "to them,"† and the adverb *ne*, "thence" (see 84):\* as *ci vado*, "I go there"; *vi è stato*, "he has been there."

\* Cf. French *en*.

† Cf. French *y*.

**48.** The conjunctive pronouns, except *loro*, immediately precede the verb: as *mi vidéte*, "you see me"; *non lo capisco*, "I don't understand him."

But when the verb is an infinitive,\* a positive imperative,† a present participle, or a past participle used without an auxiliary, the pronoun follows the verb, and is written as one word with it: as *per vederlo*, "to see him"; *di averlo veduto*, "to have seen him"; *vedételi*, "see them"; *vedéndoci*, "seeing us"; *avéndoci veduto*, "having seen us"; *vedútoti*, "having seen thee." The addition of the pronoun does not change the place of the accent.

*Loro* always follows the verb, but is never united to it: as *egli dà loro del vino*, "he gives them some wine"; *parlate loro*, "speak to them." ‡

a. When an infinitive depends immediately (without an intervening preposition) on another verb, a conjunctive pronoun belonging to the infinitive may go with either verb: as *pòsso vedérti* or *ti pòsso vedére*, "I can see thee." If both verbs have objects, the main verb regularly takes all conjunctive pronouns: as *ve lo sènto dire*, "I hear you say it."

If, however, the main verb is impersonal, it cannot take the object of the infinitive: as *bisogna farlo*, "it is necessary to do it."

If the main verb is *fare*, and the dependent infinitive has a direct object, the object of *fare*, if it has one, must be indirect:

\* Not the infinitive used — with a negative — as imperative (see 72): as *non lo fare*, "do not do it" (second pers. sing.).

† Not the negative imperative, nor the subjunctive used imperatively (see 77, a): as *non li guardáte*, "do not look at them"; *si régoli*, "let him moderate himself" (third pers. sing. pres. subj.).

‡ Students should follow strictly all of these rules; but they will find that the first is, in certain cases, not always observed by good Italian writers.

as *le fa xvere la lettera*, "he lets her have the letter"; *fàteli vedere a quel signóre*, "let that gentleman see them"; *dovrèi fàrglielo accettàre*, "I ought to make him accept it." This construction is generally used also with *lasciàre*, "to let," and often with *sentire* and *udire*, "to hear," and *vedere*, "to see."

b. When a conjunctive pronoun is joined to an infinitive, that infinitive drops its final *e*; if it ends in *-rre*, it drops *-re*: as *fàrlo* (*fàre*), "to do it"; *condúrvi* (*condúrre*), "to conduct you."

c. The final vowel of *mi*, *ti*, *si* is often, and that of *lo*, *la* is nearly always elided before a verb beginning with a vowel: as *t' amo*, "I love thee"; *l' ho visto*, "I've seen him."

d. All conjunctive pronouns except *gli* and *glie* (see 50) double their initial consonant when added to any form of a verb that ends in an accented vowel: as *dámmi* (imper. *da'* from *dàre*), "give me"; *dillo* (imper. *dì'* from *dìre*), "say it"; *parleròlle* (antique, for *le parlerò*), "I shall speak to her."

e. Pronouns are joined to the interjection *ecco*, "see here," just as they are joined to the imperative of a verb: as *eccomi*, "here I am"; *eccotelo pronto*, "here it is ready for thee."

49. When two conjunctive pronouns come together, the indirect object precedes the direct: as *mi vi presènta*, "he introduces you to me"; *non vuol presentàrvimi*, "he will not introduce me to you"; *gli si presentò un uòmo*, "a man presented himself to him."

*Lóro*, however, always comes last: as *presentátela lóro*, "introduce her to them."

*Ne* follows all forms except *lóro*: as *me ne dà*, "he gives me some"; *dátene lóro*, "give them some."

50. *Mi*, *ti*, *ci*, *vi*, *si* change their *i* to *e* before *lo*, *la*, *li*, *le*, *ne* (pronoun or adverb); and if the two words follow the verb, they are joined together: as *me lo díce*, "he tells me

it"; *ve ne domándo*, "I ask you for some"; *mandátecelo*, "send it to us."\* *Gli* and *le* ("to her") become *glie* before *lo*, *la*, *li*, *le*, *ne*, and unite with them: as *gliéli mándo*, "I send them to him, to her"; *vòglio dárglielo*, "I wish to give it to him, to her."

### DISJUNCTIVE FORMS.

**51.** These forms are so called because they do not necessarily stand next to the verb.

Disjunctive pronouns have two cases, nominative and objective. The objective case is used only after prepositions (for exceptions, see **51, a, b**).

The disjunctive forms are these:—

|  |                                     |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| <i>Io</i> , I; <i>me</i> , me.   | <i>Tu</i> , thou; <i>te</i> , thee. |
| <i>Nói</i> , we; <i>nói</i> , us.  | <i>Vói</i> , you; <i>vói</i> , you. |
| { <i>Égli</i> , <i>lui</i> , <i>éssó</i> , he; <i>lui</i> , <i>éssó</i> , him.                         |                                     |
| { <i>Élla</i> , <i>lei</i> , <i>éssa</i> , she; <i>lei</i> , <i>éssa</i> , her.                        |                                     |
| { <i>Éssi</i> , <i>loró</i> ( <i>églino</i> ), they (masc.); <i>loró</i> , <i>éssi</i> , them (masc.). |                                     |
| { <i>Ésse</i> , <i>loró</i> ( <i>élleno</i> ), they (fem.); <i>loró</i> , <i>ésse</i> , them (fem.).   |                                     |

"It" must be rendered by a masculine or feminine form, according to the gender of the noun it represents. "It" as subject of an impersonal verb is regularly not expressed (see, however, **51, h**).

Ex.: *La cásá è grandíssima, e intórno ad éssa c' è un giardíno*, the house is very large, and around it there is a garden.

*Non è véro*, it isn't true; *pióve*, it rains.

(1) The various pronouns of the third person are used as follows. In speaking of things the different forms of *éssó* are generally employed. In speaking of persons *égli*

---

\* In poetry *me lo*, *me ne*, etc., often become *mel*, *men*, etc.: as *tel dico*, "I tell thee so"; *sen tórna*, "he returns thence." *Non lo* often = *no!*

(or *esso*), *ella* (or *essa*), pl. *essi*, *esse* are used for the nominative in written Italian, but in the spoken language they are replaced by *lui*, *lei*, *loro*; for the objective *lui*, *lei*, *loro* are used both in conversation and in writing. *Églino* and *élleño* are antique forms.

Ex.: *Queste cose sono vere anch' esse*, these things are true, too.

*Élla parla con loro*, she speaks with them.

*Lèi è giovane ma lui è vècchio*, she is young, but he is old.

*Vénnero da noi anch' essi*, they came to us, too.

(2) As the Italian verb denotes by its endings the person and number of its subject, the personal pronouns of the nominative case are generally omitted. When expressed (for clearness, emphasis, or euphony), they may precede or follow the verb; in dependent clauses they nearly always follow. The subject of an interrogative verb usually comes after it, as in English.

Ex.: *Parliamo di lui*, we speak of him; *non vado*, I don't go.

*S' io fossi ricco come è egli*, if I were rich as he is.

(3) The disjunctive reflexive pronoun is *sè*, which is masculine and feminine, singular and plural.

Ex.: *Lo fecero da sè*, they did it by themselves.

a. Use the objective case: (1) When a pronoun of the third person is not subject of an expressed verb: as *beato lui*, "happy he!" *tanto i genitori che lui sono ricchi*, "his parents as well as he are rich." (2) When the pronoun stands in the predicate after the verb *essere*: as *credendo ch' io fossi te*, "thinking I was you." But "it is I," etc., are *sono io*, *sèi tu*, *è lui*, *è lei*, *siamo noi*, *siete voi*, *sono loro*. (3) In the cases mentioned in 51, b.

b. (1) Clearness or emphasis occasionally requires the disjunctive pronoun instead of the conjunctive; in this case the conjunctive form is often inserted also.

Ex.: *Parlo a voi signóre*, I speak to *you*, sir.

*Mi piace anche a me*, it pleases me too.

(2) The disjunctive form must *always* be used when the verb has two direct or two indirect objects.

Ex.: *Vedo lui e lei*, I see him and her.

*Lo do a mio padre e a te*, I give it to my father and to thee.

c. In speaking of a company, a class, or a people *nói altri*, *vói altri* (which are also written as one word) are used for *nói*, *vói*.

Ex.: *Nói altri italiani*, we Italians.

*Vói altri pittóri*, you painters.

d. "With me," "with thee," "with himself, herself, themselves" are either *con me*, etc., or *meco*, *teco*, *séco*.

e. "Myself," "thyself," etc., used for emphasis with a pronoun or noun, are rendered by the adjective *stésso*.

Ex.: *Nói stéssi la vedémmo*, we saw her ourselves.

f. "One another," "each other" is *l' un l' altro*.

Ex.: *Ci amiamo l' un l' altro*, we love one another.

g. In Florence *ella* is often shortened into *la*, which is used of both persons and things. In poetry *egli* becomes *éi*.

Ex.: *La non viène*, she doesn't come.

*Paré che la si pòssa tenér in máno*, it looks as if it might be held in the hand.

h. In impersonal phrases like "it is" the subject, "it," is occasionally expressed in Italian; it is then translated *egli*, which in the spoken language is shortened into *gli*.

Ex.: *Gli è che*, it is because.

**52.** (1) The usual form of address in Italy is *Élla* \* (or *élla*), objective *Lèi* (or *lèi*); in conversation *Élla* is replaced by *Lèi* (or *lèi*). This word really means "it," and takes the verb in the third person; but an adjective or past participle modifying it agrees in gender with the person it represents. The plural of *Élla* is *Lóro* (or *lóro*), which takes the verb in the third person plural.

Ex.: *Lèi* or *Élla* è *tedesco*, *signóre*, you are German, sir.

*Signorina Nèri*, *Lèi* (or *Élla*) *fu lasciáta sóla*, Miss Neri, you were left alone.

*Sóno lieto che La stia bène* (see 51, g), I'm glad you are well.

*E Lóro, dove vanno*, and you, where are you going?

*Lóro erano già partiti*, you were already gone.

*Signorine, lóro sónó móltó studiósse*, young ladies, you are very studious.

Like other personal pronouns, *Élla* and *Lóro* are very often omitted in the nominative.

*Lèi è tróppo gentile* or *è tróppo gentile*, you are too kind.

*Cóme stánno*, how do you (pl.) do?

The conjunctive forms of *Élla* are *La*, *Le* (or *la*, *le*), those of *Lóro* are *Li*, *Le*, *Lóro* (or *li*, *le*, *lóro*); they occupy the same positions and undergo the same modifications as the corresponding pronouns of the third person (see 48, 49, 50). The reflexive pronoun of *Élla* and *Lóro* is *si*.

Ex.: *Le prométto di visitárla*, I promise (you) to visit you.

*Glièlo do*, I give it to you.

*La prègo d' accomodársi*, I beg you to seat yourself.

*Vidi Lèi e il bábbó*, I saw you and your father (see 51, b, 2).

*Dico lóro*, I tell you (pl.).

---

\* Standing for *Vòstra Signoria*, "your lordship" or "ladyship," or some other title of the feminine gender.



*Le cercava*, I was looking for you (fem. pl.).

*Si divertono, signorini*, are you enjoying yourselves, young gentlemen?

The possessive of *Èlla* is *Súo* (or *súo*). See 45.

Ex.: *La Súa gradita lettera*, your welcome letter.

(2) *Vói* is the form of address oftenest found in books; it is used sometimes in conversation also, but only toward inferiors or toward equals with whom one is on familiar terms.\* It is employed for both plural and singular (like English "you"), although its verb is always plural; an adjective or participle modifying it agrees in gender and number with the person or persons it represents.

Ex.: *Vói qui, Piètro*, You here, Peter?

*Vói sìtte alti tútti e due*, you are tall, both of you.

(3) In speaking to an intimate friend, a near relative, a child, or an animal the only form of address is *tu*. *Tu* is used also, like English "thou," in poetry and poetic prose. The plural of *tu* is *vói*.

Ex.: *Ti chidmo Enrico*, I call you Henry.

*Dóve sèi tu*, where art thou?

*Vòglio vedèrvi, figliuóli mièi*, my children, I wish to see you.

## EXERCISE II.

Tant' è<sup>1</sup>! dicéva<sup>2</sup> tra sè un giòrno Niccolíno; vòglio<sup>3</sup> vedére se quégli uccellini son<sup>4</sup> nàti. Li guárdo<sup>5</sup> solaménte e riscéndo<sup>6</sup> súbito. — E Niccolíno s' arrámpica<sup>7</sup> su per quell' álbero, tentádo<sup>8</sup> d' arriváre al nído per levársi quélle curiosità. Ma sul più bèllo,<sup>9</sup> sènte<sup>10</sup> la vóce del bábbò il quále éra<sup>11</sup> lì prèssò nélla vióttola;

---

\* Though advocated by some of the best writers and speakers of Italian, the use of *vói* instead of *Léi* and *Lóro* has not become general. In Southern Italy, however, *vói* is the form popularly used.

vuòle<sup>12</sup> scènder lêsto per non fàrsi cògliere in fàllo, ma nëlla fúria si smarrisce,<sup>13</sup> gli mánca<sup>14</sup> il sostégno, precipita<sup>15</sup> a tèrra, e cadèndo<sup>16</sup> si fa mále a<sup>17</sup> un piède. Il dolóre lo fa<sup>18</sup> strillàre ; àlle grida córrono<sup>19</sup> il bábbò e la màmma che lo raccòlgono<sup>20</sup> esclamándo<sup>21</sup> : — Te l' abbíamo<sup>22</sup> détto le cènto vòlte che a' nìdi non ti dovèvi<sup>23</sup> voltàr nemméno : êcco quel che succède<sup>24</sup> ai curiòsi e a' disubbidienti. — E sòrte per lúi che lo sentírono,<sup>25</sup> perchè cosí potérono<sup>26</sup> prònti bagnàrgli il piède coll' ácqua frèdda, e dòpo avèrglielo tenúto in quell' ácqua parécchio tèmpo, potéron<sup>26</sup> fasciàrglielo strétto ; in quèsto mòdo e dòpo quálche giòrno di ripòso assolúto, Niccolíno potè<sup>27</sup> ricominciàre a fàre quálche pássò per càsa.

<sup>1</sup> I don't care. <sup>2</sup> Said. <sup>3</sup> I want. <sup>4</sup> Are. <sup>5</sup> I will look at. <sup>6</sup> Will come down again. <sup>7</sup> Climbs. <sup>8</sup> Trying. <sup>9</sup> *Sul più bello* = at the critical moment. <sup>10</sup> He hears. <sup>11</sup> Was. <sup>12</sup> He tries. <sup>13</sup> He gets confused. <sup>14</sup> Fails. <sup>15</sup> He tumbles. <sup>16</sup> Falling. <sup>17</sup> *Fa mále a* = he injures. <sup>18</sup> Makes. <sup>19</sup> Run. <sup>20</sup> Pick up. <sup>21</sup> Exclaiming. <sup>22</sup> We have. <sup>23</sup> *Non dovèvi* = you mustn't. <sup>24</sup> Happens. <sup>25</sup> They heard. <sup>26</sup> They could. <sup>27</sup> Was able.

## EXERCISE 12.

[In this exercise CARLINO and GORO use *vói*; ARMANDO uses *vói* before GORO enters, *L'èi* afterwards.]

*Carlino*. Sir, we are<sup>1</sup> alone.

*Armádo*. So it seems<sup>2</sup> (*looking<sup>3</sup> around*).

*Carlino*. I repeat<sup>4</sup> to you that we are<sup>1</sup> alone (*louder*).

*Armádo*. But I tell<sup>5</sup> you that I admit-it.<sup>6</sup>

*Carlino*. It is<sup>7</sup> time to-raise<sup>8</sup> the mask —

*Armádo*. (Oh-my<sup>9</sup> ! this-fellow<sup>10</sup> has<sup>11</sup> recognized me.)

*Carlino*. And to<sup>15</sup> speak plainly.

*Armádo*. That is<sup>7</sup> what I wanted<sup>12</sup> to<sup>15</sup> do, but they interrupted<sup>13</sup> me all-the-time.<sup>14</sup>

*Carlino*. Do<sup>15</sup> you see<sup>16</sup> that grove over-there ?

*Armádo*. I see<sup>17</sup> it.

*Carlino*. There nobody will-interrupt<sup>18</sup> you.

*Armádo*. Must<sup>19</sup> I go there to speak (*surprised*) ?

*Carlino*. We shall-go<sup>20</sup> together.

*Enter*<sup>15</sup> GORO with two guns.

*Carlino.* (*Taking*<sup>21</sup> *one of-them*) Take<sup>22</sup> the other.

*Armádo.* Thanks, I am<sup>23</sup> not<sup>24</sup> a<sup>25</sup> hunter.

*Gôro.* Take<sup>22</sup> it, or-else<sup>26</sup> — (*brandishing*<sup>27</sup> *a thick club*).

*Armádo.* Willingly — to<sup>28</sup> satisfy you — excuse-me,<sup>29</sup> is<sup>7</sup> it loaded?

*Carlino.* To-be-brief,<sup>30</sup> you hate<sup>31</sup> me; you must<sup>32</sup> hate me. I hate<sup>33</sup> you. So<sup>47</sup> over-there in that grove — at eighty paces from-each-other<sup>34</sup> — bang!<sup>35</sup> Either you kill<sup>36</sup> me or I kill<sup>37</sup> you.

*Armádo.* But I have<sup>38</sup> n't<sup>24</sup> these sinister intentions, which-are<sup>15</sup> contrary to my principles.

*Carlino.* In that<sup>50</sup> case you will-permit<sup>39</sup> this-man-to-amuse-himself-by-shaking<sup>40</sup> the dust from your<sup>41</sup> black coat with that club.

*Armádo.* No, indeed; what-are-you-thinking-of<sup>42</sup>? It would-be<sup>43</sup> too much-trouble<sup>44</sup>! (*Gôro brandishes*<sup>45</sup> *the club*) Be-easy<sup>46</sup> with the club.

*Carlino.* No? Then<sup>47</sup> Carolína must<sup>48</sup> be mine.

*Armádo.* You're-welcome-to-her.<sup>49</sup>

*Carlino.* In that<sup>50</sup> case we are friends; but be-off<sup>51</sup> from<sup>52</sup> here, do-you-understand<sup>53</sup>?

*Armádo.* (What a<sup>54</sup> nice way they have<sup>55</sup> in this country!)

<sup>1</sup> Sidmo. <sup>2</sup> Päre. <sup>3</sup> Guardádo. <sup>4</sup> Ripêto. <sup>5</sup> Dico. <sup>6</sup> Ne convêngo. <sup>7</sup> È.  
<sup>8</sup> To (*di*) raise to one's self. . . . <sup>9</sup> Ahi. <sup>10</sup> See 42, 2. <sup>11</sup> Ha. <sup>12</sup> Volêvo.  
<sup>13</sup> Hânno interrôtto. <sup>14</sup> Always. <sup>15</sup> Omit. <sup>16</sup> Vedête. <sup>17</sup> Vêdo. <sup>18</sup> Interromperà.  
<sup>19</sup> Dêvo. <sup>20</sup> Andrémo. <sup>21</sup> Prendêdo. <sup>22</sup> Prendête. <sup>23</sup> Sôno.  
<sup>24</sup> Non, "not," must precede the verb. <sup>25</sup> See 16, a. <sup>26</sup> Allrimènti.  
<sup>27</sup> Agitádo. <sup>28</sup> Per. <sup>29</sup> Scúsi. <sup>30</sup> Alle còrte. <sup>31</sup> Odidte. <sup>32</sup> Dovête.  
<sup>33</sup> Ôdio. <sup>34</sup> The one from the other. <sup>35</sup> Brun. <sup>36</sup> Ammazzáte. <sup>37</sup> Ammázzo.  
<sup>38</sup> Ho. <sup>39</sup> Permetterête. <sup>40</sup> That this man amuses (*divërta*) himself to shake.  
<sup>41</sup> See 45, c. <sup>42</sup> Seems-it (*päre*) to you? <sup>43</sup> Sarêbbe.  
<sup>44</sup> Incômodo. <sup>45</sup> Ágita. <sup>46</sup> Stia buòno. <sup>47</sup> Dùnque. <sup>48</sup> Dêve. <sup>49</sup> Take ( *pigli*, subj.) her then (*püre*) for-yourself. <sup>50</sup> Tal. <sup>51</sup> Vía. <sup>52</sup> Di.  
<sup>53</sup> Intendêste. <sup>54</sup> 43, b. <sup>55</sup> Hânno.

## AUXILIARY VERBS.

**53.** The irregular verbs *essere*, "to be," and *avere*, "to have," are the ones most used as auxiliaries in Italian. They are conjugated as follows:—

*a. Infinitives:* *essere*, to be; *essere stato*, to have been.

**Participles:** *essendo*, being; *essendo stato*, having been; *stato*, been.

## Indicative.

| PRESENT.      | IMPERFECT.      | PRETERITE.     | FUTURE.         |
|---------------|-----------------|----------------|-----------------|
| <i>Sono,</i>  | <i>Èra,</i>     | <i>Fui,</i>    | <i>Sarò,</i>    |
| <i>sai,</i>   | <i>eri,</i>     | <i>festi,</i>  | <i>sarai,</i>   |
| <i>è,</i>     | <i>era,</i>     | <i>fu,</i>     | <i>sarà,</i>    |
| <i>sidmo,</i> | <i>eravamo.</i> | <i>fummo.</i>  | <i>saremo,</i>  |
| <i>sidte,</i> | <i>eravate.</i> | <i>foste,</i>  | <i>sarete,</i>  |
| <i>sòno.</i>  | <i>erano.</i>   | <i>furono.</i> | <i>saranno.</i> |

| PERFECT.                     | PLUPERFECT.                    | PRETERITE PERFECT.           | FUTURE PERFECT.               |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------|------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>Sòno stato (stata),</i>   | <i>Èra stato (stata),</i>      | <i>Fui stato (stata),</i>    | <i>Sarò stato (stata),</i>    |
| etc.                         | etc.                           | etc.                         | etc.                          |
| <i>sidmo statti (státe),</i> | <i>eravamo statti (státe),</i> | <i>fummo statti (státe),</i> | <i>saremo statti (státe),</i> |
| etc.                         | etc.                           | etc.                         | etc.                          |

## Imperative.

## Subjunctive.

## Conditional.

|                    | PRESENT.               | IMPERFECT.      |                   |
|--------------------|------------------------|-----------------|-------------------|
|                    | <i>Sia,</i>            | <i>Fossi,</i>   | <i>Sarèi,</i>     |
| <i>Sii or sia,</i> | <i>sia,</i>            | <i>fossi,</i>   | <i>saresti,</i>   |
|                    | <i>sia,</i>            | <i>fosse,</i>   | <i>sarebbe.</i>   |
| <i>sidmo,</i>      | <i>sidmo,</i>          | <i>fossimo,</i> | <i>saremmo,</i>   |
| <i>sidte.</i>      | <i>sidte,</i>          | <i>foste,</i>   | <i>saresté,</i>   |
|                    | <i>siano or sieno.</i> | <i>fossero.</i> | <i>sarebbero.</i> |

|  | PERFECT.                  | PLUPERFECT.                 | PERFECT.                    |
|--|---------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
|  | <i>Sia stato (stata),</i> | <i>Fossi stato (stata),</i> | <i>Sarèi stato (stata),</i> |
|  | etc.                      | etc.                        | etc.                        |

b. **Infinitives:** *avére*, to have; *avére avúto*, to have had.

**Participles:** *avèndo*, having; *avèndo avúto*, having had; *avúto*, had

### Indicative.

| PRESENT.         | IMPERFECT.          | PRETERITE.         | FUTURE.            |
|------------------|---------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| <i>Hò,</i>       | <i>Avéva,</i>       | <i>Èbbi,</i>       | <i>Avrà,</i>       |
| <i>hai,</i>      | <i>avévi,</i>       | <i>avésti,</i>     | <i>avrà,</i>       |
| <i>ha,</i>       | <i>avéva,</i>       | <i>ebbe,</i>       | <i>avrà,</i>       |
| <i>abbiamo,</i>  | <i>avevamo,</i>     | <i>avemmo.</i>     | <i>avrèmo,</i>     |
| <i>avete,</i>    | <i>avevate,</i>     | <i>avéste,</i>     | <i>avrète,</i>     |
| <i>hanno.</i>    | <i>avévano.</i>     | <i>ebbero.</i>     | <i>avràno.</i>     |
| PERFECT.         | PLUPERFECT.         | PRETERITE PERFECT. | FUTURE PERFECT.    |
| <i>Ho avúto,</i> | <i>Avéva avúto,</i> | <i>Èbbi avúto,</i> | <i>Avrà avúto,</i> |
| etc.             | etc.                | etc.               | etc.               |

| Imperative.     | Subjunctive.          |                      | Conditional.        |
|-----------------|-----------------------|----------------------|---------------------|
|                 | PRESENT.              | IMPERFECT.           |                     |
|                 | <i>Ábbia,</i>         | <i>Avéssi,</i>       | <i>Avréi,</i>       |
| <i>Ábbi,</i>    | <i>abbì or abbia,</i> | <i>avéssi,</i>       | <i>avrésti,</i>     |
|                 | <i>abbia,</i>         | <i>avésse,</i>       | <i>avrèbbe,</i>     |
| <i>abbiamo,</i> | <i>abbiamo,</i>       | <i>avéssimo,</i>     | <i>avrèmmo,</i>     |
| <i>abbiate.</i> | <i>abbiate.</i>       | <i>avéste,</i>       | <i>avrèste,</i>     |
|                 | <i>abbiano.</i>       | <i>avéssero.</i>     | <i>avrèbbero.</i>   |
|                 | PERFECT.              | PLUPERFECT.          | PERFECT.            |
|                 | <i>Ábbia avúto,</i>   | <i>Avéssi avúto,</i> | <i>Avréi avúto,</i> |
|                 | etc.                  | etc.                 | etc.                |

54. (1) The auxiliary of the passive is *essere*, "to be."

Ex.: *Sono amato*, I am loved.

(2) The future ("shall," "will") and the conditional ("should," "would") are formed in Italian without any auxiliary.

Ex.: *Io andrò ed egli verrà*, I shall go, and he will come.

*Vorrèi vederlo*, I should like to see him.

(3) The auxiliary of the perfect, pluperfect, preterite perfect, and future perfect tenses is *avére*, "to have," if the verb be active and transitive. If the verb be passive, reflexive, or reciprocal, the auxiliary is always *essere*. If the verb be intransitive, the auxiliary is generally *essere*, but sometimes *avére*.\*

Ex.: *Ho parlato*, I have spoken.

*Avévano fatto queste cose*, they had done these things.

*Mi sono fatto male*, I have hurt myself.

*Le donne si erano sbagliate*, the women had made a mistake.

*Sarò venuto*, I shall have come; *è nevicato*, it has snowed.

a. A past participle used with the auxiliary *essere* must agree with its subject in gender and number. But when the verb has a reflexive pronoun as *indirect* object, and some other word as *direct* object, the past participle may agree with the subject, or with the direct object, or remain invariable.

Ex.: *La ragazza è tornata*, the girl has returned.

*Le donne si sono disputate*, the women have disputed.

*La sorella si è fatta male*, our sister has hurt herself.

*Ci siamo fatti onore*, we have done ourselves credit.

*Ci siamo data (or dato) parola d' onore*, we have pledged our word of honor.

b. A past participle used with *avére* may or may not agree with its direct object, according to the choice of the writer. It usually does not agree when the object follows; and it nearly always does agree when the object is a personal pronoun preceding the verb.

Ex.: *La birra che aveva bevuto* (or *bevuta*), the beer he had drunk.

*Ho veduto molte cose*, I have seen many things.

*Li ho trovati*, I have found them.

c. "To be," expressing a state or condition, is often rendered by *stare* (§2, 4), instead of *essere*. *Stare per* or *essere per* (followed by the infinitive) means "to be on the point of."

---

\* The use of *avére* with intransitive verbs must be learned by practice.

Ex.: *Sto bène*, I'm well; *cóme sta*, how are you?  
*Stáva per uscíre*, I was just going out.

d. English "am" (or "was") + the present participle, when expressing duration, is rendered either by the simple present (or imperfect) or by the same tense of *stáre*\* + the present participle; when denoting futurity, it is translated by the future (or conditional), sometimes by the present (or imperfect).

Ex.: *Cammináva*, he was walking; *státe lavorándo*, you are working.  
*Leggévano* or *stávano leggéndo*, they were reading.  
*Médito* or *sto meditándo*, I am meditating.  
*Dice che verrà* (or *viène*), he says he is coming.  
*Disse che verrebbe*, he said he was coming.

e. A verb with the auxiliary "used to" (or "would" = "used to") is translated either by the simple imperfect, or by the infinitive with *solére*, "to be accustomed" (92, 14).

Ex.: *Vi andáva* (or *soléva andáre*) *ógni séra*, he used to go there every evening.

f. *Venire*, "to come" (92, 166), and *rimanére*, "to remain" (92, 16), are sometimes used as auxiliaries in the simple tenses of the passive, instead of *éssere*. *Andáre*, "to go" (92, 1), is similarly used, but always implying duty or obligation.

Ex.: *Il ládro vénne arrestáto*, the thief was arrested.  
*Rimási sorpréso*, I was surprised.  
*Il fucile non va toccáto*, the gun mustn't be touched.

g. The English auxiliary "do" is not expressed in Italian.

Ex.: *Non viène*, he does not come.

h. "To have a thing done" is *far fáre úna còsa* (92, 2).

Ex.: *Il re lo féce ammazzáre*, the king had him killed.

---

\* *Andáre* (92, 1) and *venire* (92, 166) are sometimes used instead of *stáre*.

**55.** The third person of the passive is very often replaced by the reflexive construction with *si*: as *si racconta*, "it is related"; *questo libro si legge*, "this book is read"; *la spada che mi si diède*, "the sword that was given me"; *quelle cose si facevano*, "those things were done." Many writers always make the verb agree with its subject in number; but in popular speech the verb is nearly always in the singular when its subject follows (as if *si* were the subject of the verb, and the original subject were the object): as *si vedono* (or *vede*) *moltissime cose*, "many things are seen"; *non si può* (or *pòssono*) *leggere questi libri*, "these books can't be read."

The construction with *si* is generally used also to render the English indefinite "they" followed by a verb: as *si dice*, "they say." In this sense it is employed with neuter as well as with transitive verbs: as *si va spèssso*, "people often go."

See also **63**, *a*.

**56.** Following are synopses of the compound tenses of transitive, neuter, reflexive, and passive verbs. In the paradigms given henceforth these forms will be omitted.

*a.* Following is a synopsis of the compound tenses of *trovare*, "to find," and *venire*, "to come": —

*Avere trovato*, to have found.

*Avendo trovato*, having found.

*Ho trovato*, I have found.

*Avéva trovato*, I had found.

*Èbbi trovato*, I had found.

*Avrò trovato*, I shall have found.

*Avrèi trovato*, I should have found.

*Abbia trovato*, I have found.

*Avèssi trovato*, I had found.

*Èssere venuto*, to have come.

*Essendo venuto*, having come.

*Sono venuto*, I have come.

*Èra venuto*, I had come.

*Fui venuto*, I had come.

*Sarò venuto*, I shall have come.

*Sarèi venuto*, I should have come.

*Sia venuto*, I have come.

*Fòssi venuto*, I had come.



b. Following is a synopsis of the compound tenses of *alzàrsi* ("to raise one's self"), "to get up," and *andàrsene*,\* "to go away."

|                             |                          |                              |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------|------------------------------|
| <b>Infinitive</b> PERFECT:  | <i>Èssersi alzàto,</i>   | <i>Èssersene anddàto,</i>    |
| <b>Participle</b> PERFECT:  | <i>Essendosi alzàto,</i> | <i>Essendosiene anddàto,</i> |
| <b>Indicative</b> PERFECT:  | <i>Mi sòno alzàto,</i>   | <i>Me ne sòno anddàto,</i>   |
| PLUPERFECT:                 | <i>Mi èra alzàto,</i>    | <i>Me ne èra anddàto,</i>    |
| PRETERITE PERFECT:          | <i>Mi fùì alzàto,</i>    | <i>Me ne fùì anddàto,</i>    |
| FUTURE PERFECT:             | <i>Mi sarò alzàto,</i>   | <i>Me ne sarò anddàto,</i>   |
| <b>Conditional</b> PERFECT: | <i>Mi sarèi alzàto,</i>  | <i>Me ne sarèi anddàto,</i>  |
| <b>Subjunctive</b> PERFECT: | <i>Mi sia alzàto,</i>    | <i>Me ne sia anddàto,</i>    |
| PLUPERFECT:                 | <i>Mi fòssi alzàto.</i>  | <i>Me ne fòssi anddàto.</i>  |

c. Following is a synopsis of the entire passive of *amàre*, "to love": —

|                             |   |
|-----------------------------|---|
| <b>Infinitive</b> PRESENT:  | <i>Èssere amàto,</i> to be loved.                   |
| PERFECT:                    | <i>Èssere stàto amàto,</i> to have been loved.      |
| <b>Participle</b> PRESENT:  | <i>Essendo amàto,</i> being loved.                  |
| PERFECT:                    | <i>Essendo stàto amàto,</i> having been loved.      |
| <b>Indicative</b> PRESENT:  | <i>Sòno amàto,</i> I am loved.                      |
| PERFECT:                    | <i>Sòno stàto amàto,</i> I have been loved.         |
| IMPERFECT:                  | <i>Èra amàto,</i> I was loved.                      |
| PLUPERFECT:                 | <i>Èra stàto amàto,</i> I had been loved.           |
| PRETERITE:                  | <i>Fùì amàto,</i> I was loved.                      |
| PRETERITE PERFECT:          | <i>Fùì stàto amàto,</i> I had been loved.           |
| FUTURE:                     | <i>Sarò amàto,</i> I shall be loved.                |
| FUTURE PERFECT:             | <i>Sarò stàto amàto,</i> I shall have been loved.   |
| <b>Conditional:</b>         | <i>Sarèi amàto,</i> I should be loved.              |
| PERFECT:                    | <i>Sarèi stàto amàto,</i> I should have been loved. |
| <b>Imperative:</b>          | <i>Sii amàto,</i> be loved.                         |
| <b>Subjunctive</b> PRESENT: | <i>Sia amàto,</i> I am loved.                       |
| PERFECT:                    | <i>Sia stàto amàto,</i> I have been loved.          |
| IMPERFECT:                  | <i>Fòssi amàto,</i> I were loved.                   |
| PLUPERFECT:                 | <i>Fòssi stàto amàto,</i> I had been loved.         |

---

\* *Andàrsene* is composed of the verb *andàre*, "to go," the reflexive *si*, and the adverb *ne*, "thence" (see 47, a).

57. "May," "might," "can," "could" are generally rendered by the proper tense of *potére*; \* "must," "ought," "shall" = "must," "should" = "ought," by *dovére*; \* "will" and "would" expressing volition, by *volére*.\*

Ex.: *Può essere véro*, it may be true.

*Non potéva parláre*, he couldn't speak.

*Dève pagárlo*, he must pay him, he shall pay him.

*Dovrébbe fárló*, he ought to do it, he should do it.

*Vóglio sapére*, I will know.

*Non vorréi andré*, I wouldn't go.

No preposition intervenes between these verbs and the dependent infinitive.

Ex.: *Hánno potuto dormire*, they have been able to sleep.

*Potrémó partíre*, we shall be able to start.

*Dovémmo venire*, we had to come.

*Dovréte trovarla*, you will have to find her.

*Vorrà torndre*, he will want to return.

*Vorréi sapére*, I should like to know.

These verbs are not defective, like the English modal auxiliaries; hence in Italian the tense is expressed by the auxiliary itself, and not by the dependent infinitive. To find the proper form of *potére*, *dovére*, or *volére*, replace "may," etc., by the correct tense of "to be able"; "must," etc., by "to be obliged"; "will," etc., by "to want" or "to like": as "I could have said it" = "I should have (*avréi*) been able (*potúto*) to say it (*dírlo*)" = *avréi potúto dírló*.

Ex.: *Avrébbe dovúto tacére*, he ought to have kept still.

*Avrémmo volúto restáre*, we would have stayed.

---

\* See 92, 21, 8, 19. The auxiliary of these verbs is regularly *avére*; but some writers use with them the auxiliary that belongs to the dependent infinitive: as *hánno potuto venire* or *sóno potúti venire*, "they have been able to come."

a. "Must" is also expressed by the impersonal verb *bisognare*, "to be necessary," followed by the infinitive or by *che*, "that," with the subjunctive. "To have to" is *avere da*.

Ex.: *Bisogna farlo*, it must be done.

*Bisogna che andiamo*, we must go.

*Ho da scrivere una lettera*, I have to write a letter.

b. "To be able" meaning "to know how" is *sapere* (see 92, 6). "Not to be able to help" doing a thing is *non poter a meno di non* (with infinitive) or *non poter fare a meno di* (with infinitive).

Ex.: *Non sèppe farlo*, he couldn't do it.

*Sa leggere e scrivere*, he can read and write.

*Non potè a meno di non ridere*, he couldn't help laughing.

### EXERCISE 13.

Giorgétto è un bambino vispo, vispo. È sollécito; àlle sètte è già leváto, ed è già andáto nel giardíno. È mággio, e il giardíno è tútto fioríto; ròse, gígli, viðe mándano<sup>1</sup> un odóre soáve. Giorgétto si strúgge<sup>2</sup> di cògliere i fióri; ma la mámma non vuòle<sup>3</sup>: la mámma lo ha lasciáto andár nel giardíno, a pátto che non cogliésse<sup>4</sup> i fióri. A un trátto Giorgétto véde<sup>5</sup> úna ròsa piú bèlla di tútte le áltre, non resiste<sup>6</sup> piú al desidèrio di pigliárla. La mámma non lo saprà,<sup>7</sup> non lo può<sup>8</sup> sapére, — díce<sup>9</sup> fra sè Giorgétto; e stènde<sup>10</sup> la máno al cespúglio, ed è per còglierla. Ma che è státo? Ritira<sup>11</sup> lèsto la máno, e grida,<sup>12</sup> e piánge.<sup>13</sup> La ròsa ha le spíne: il súo gámbo nascósto tra bellíssime fòglie è tútto pièno di spíne; e le spíne gli háanno bucáto tútta la máno. La máno è sanguinósa; e Giorgétto piánge,<sup>13</sup> e la mámma óra si avvedrà<sup>14</sup> che il súo bambino è disobbediènte.

<sup>1</sup> Send forth. <sup>2</sup> Is dying. <sup>3</sup> Is willing. <sup>4</sup> He should pick. <sup>5</sup> Sees. <sup>6</sup> Resists. <sup>7</sup> Will know. <sup>8</sup> Can. <sup>9</sup> Says. <sup>10</sup> Stretches out. <sup>11</sup> He draws back. <sup>12</sup> Screams. <sup>13</sup> Cries. <sup>14</sup> Will see.

## EXERCISE 14.

Silvio Pellico was<sup>1</sup> confined in prison ; and there, in the silence of his<sup>2</sup> dungeon, he found<sup>3</sup> a friend, a companion — a spider. Yes, a spider made<sup>4</sup> his web in a corner of the prison, and Silvio did<sup>5</sup> not-destroy-it<sup>6</sup> ; on-the-contrary,<sup>7</sup> he used-to-throw<sup>8</sup> him crumbs<sup>9</sup> of bread, and little by little he became-so-attached<sup>10</sup> to that spider, and, the spider to him, that the creature used-to-come-down<sup>11</sup> from his web and go<sup>12</sup> to find Pellico,<sup>13</sup> and would-go<sup>12</sup> on his<sup>14</sup> hand and take<sup>15</sup> food<sup>9</sup> from his<sup>14</sup> fingers. One day the jailer removed<sup>16</sup> the unhappy Pellico. The prisoner thought-of<sup>17</sup> his spider, and said<sup>18</sup> : “ Now that I am-going-away,<sup>19</sup> he will-come-back<sup>20</sup> perhaps, and will-find<sup>21</sup> the prison empty ; or if there-is<sup>22</sup> somebody else here,<sup>23</sup> he may<sup>24</sup> be an enemy of spiders,<sup>9</sup> and tear down that beautiful web and crush the poor beast.”

<sup>1</sup> Preterite. <sup>2</sup> See 45, b. <sup>3</sup> *Trovò.* <sup>4</sup> *Fecce.* <sup>5</sup> See 54, g. <sup>6</sup> Not to-him it destroyed (*disfecce*). <sup>7</sup> *Anzi.* <sup>8</sup> *Buttòva* : see 54, e. <sup>9</sup> Def. art. <sup>10</sup> *Tanto si affezionò.* <sup>11</sup> *Si movèva* : see 54, e. <sup>12</sup> *Anddva.* <sup>13</sup> See 13, e. <sup>14</sup> See 45, c. <sup>15</sup> *Prendeva.* <sup>16</sup> *Mutò di stànza.* <sup>17</sup> *Pensava a.* <sup>18</sup> *Dicèva.* <sup>19</sup> See 54, d: *me ne vado.* <sup>20</sup> *Ritornerà.* <sup>21</sup> *Troverà.* <sup>22</sup> *Vi sarà.* <sup>23</sup> Omit. <sup>24</sup> *Potrèbbe* : see 57.

## REGULAR AND IRREGULAR VERBS.

58. Italian verbs are divided into four conjugations, according as the infinitive ending is *-dre*, accented *-ère*, unaccented *-ere* (or *-rre*), or *-ire*. Regular verbs of the second and third conjugations are, however, inflected just alike.

a. The final *e* of the infinitive may be dropped before any word except one beginning with *s* impure.\*

\* Cf. 10, b; 14, b. Italians find it hard to pronounce three consecutive consonants of which the middle one is *s*.

**THE REGULAR VERB.**

**59.** *Parlare*, "to speak," will serve as a model for the first conjugation. All compound tenses are omitted (see 55):—

**Infinitive and Participles.**

*Parlare, parlando, parlato.*

**Indicative.**

| PRESENT.         | IMPERFECT.        | PRETERITE.        | FUTURE.            |
|------------------|-------------------|-------------------|--------------------|
| <i>Parlo,</i>    | <i>Parlava,</i>   | <i>Parlái,</i>    | <i>Parlerò,</i>    |
| <i>parli,</i>    | <i>parlavi,</i>   | <i>parlasti,</i>  | <i>parlerai,</i>   |
| <i>parla,</i>    | <i>parlava,</i>   | <i>parlò,</i>     | <i>parlerà,</i>    |
| <i>parliamo,</i> | <i>parlavamo,</i> | <i>parlammo,</i>  | <i>parleremo,</i>  |
| <i>parlate,</i>  | <i>parlavate,</i> | <i>parlaste,</i>  | <i>parlerete,</i>  |
| <i>parlano.</i>  | <i>parlavano.</i> | <i>parlarono.</i> | <i>parleranno.</i> |

**Imperative.****Subjunctive.****Conditional**

|                  | PRESENT.         | IMPERFECT.         |                      |
|------------------|------------------|--------------------|----------------------|
|                  | <i>Parli,</i>    | <i>Parlássì,</i>   | <i>Parlerèi,</i>     |
| <i>Parla,</i>    | <i>parli,</i>    | <i>parlássì,</i>   | <i>parlerèsti,</i>   |
|                  | <i>parli,</i>    | <i>parlássè,</i>   | <i>parlerèbbe,</i>   |
| <i>parliamo,</i> | <i>parliamo,</i> | <i>parlássimo,</i> | <i>parlerèmmo,</i>   |
| <i>parlate.</i>  | <i>parliate,</i> | <i>parlaste,</i>   | <i>parlerèste,</i>   |
|                  | <i>parlino.</i>  | <i>parlássero.</i> | <i>parlerèbbero.</i> |

a. Verbs whose infinitives end in *-care* or *-gare* insert *h* after the *c* or *g* in all forms where those letters precede *e* or *i*: as *pàghi* (*pagàre*), "let him pay"; *cercherò* (*cercàre*), "I shall search." Verbs in *-ciare* and *-giare* drop the *i* before *e* or *i*: as *mangi* (*mangiàre*), "thou eatest"; *comincerà*\* (*cominciàre*), "he will

---

\* Some writers retain the *i* before *e*: as *comincerà*.

begin." Verbs in *-chiare* and *-gliare* drop the *i* only before another *i*: as *picchi* (*picchiàre*), "let him strike"; *pigli* (*pagliàre*), "thou takest"; but *picchierà*, *paglierà*.

*b.* The verbs *giocàre*, *rotàre*, *sonàre* change *o* of the stem into *uo* in all forms where that vowel is accented: as *suòni*, "let him play"; *giuòcano*, "they play." *Rinnovàre* and *tonàre* generally make the same change.

**60.** Verbs of the second and third conjugations \* are inflected like *credere*, "to believe":—

### Infinitive and Participles.

*Credere*,      *credendo*,      *creduto*.

### Indicative.

| PRESENT.          | IMPERFECT.         | PRETERITE.                                 | FUTURE.             |
|-------------------|--------------------|--|---------------------|
| <i>Credo</i> ,    | <i>Credéva</i> ,   | <i>Credèi</i><br>( <i>credètti</i> ),      | <i>Crederò</i> ,    |
| <i>credì</i> ,    | <i>credévi</i> ,   | <i>credèsti</i> ,                          | <i>crederàì</i> ,   |
| <i>credè</i> ,    | <i>credéva</i> ,   | <i>credè</i><br>( <i>credètte</i> ),       | <i>crederà</i> ,    |
| <i>credidmo</i> , | <i>credevdmo</i> , | <i>credémmo</i> ,                          | <i>crederémo</i> ,  |
| <i>credéte</i> ,  | <i>credevàte</i> , | <i>credèste</i> ,                          | <i>crederète</i> ,  |
| <i>credono</i> .  | <i>credévano</i> . | <i>credérono</i><br>( <i>credèttero</i> ). | <i>crederánno</i> . |

### Imperative.

### Subjunctive.

### Conditional

|                   | PRESENT.          | IMPERFECT.          |                       |
|-------------------|-------------------|---------------------|-----------------------|
|                   | <i>Creda</i> ,    | <i>Credèssi</i> ,   | <i>Crederèi</i> ,     |
| <i>Credì</i> ,    | <i>credà</i> ,    | <i>credèssi</i> ,   | <i>crederèsti</i> ,   |
|                   | <i>credà</i> ,    | <i>credèsse</i> ,   | <i>crederèbbe</i> ,   |
| <i>credidmo</i> , | <i>credidmo</i> , | <i>credèssimo</i> , | <i>crederémmo</i> ,   |
| <i>credéte</i> .  | <i>credidte</i> , | <i>credèste</i> ,   | <i>crederèste</i> ,   |
|                   | <i>credàno</i> .  | <i>credèssero</i> . | <i>crederèbbero</i> . |

---

\* Most grammars and dictionaries class these two together as the "second conjugation."

*Battere, compêtere, convêrgere, divêrgere, lûcere, mescere, miêtere, pâscere, prûdere, ripêtere, strîdere, têssere, tøndere*, and their compounds do not have in the preterite the forms in parentheses.

Verbs in *-cere* and *-gere* insert after the *c* or *g* an *i* before the *u* of the past participle, but not before the *o* or *a* of the singular or third person plural of the present indicative or subjunctive: as *mescere*; *mêsko, mêsci, mêsce, mesciâmo, mescête, mêscôno*; *mêscâ, etc., mêscano; mesciûto*.

**61.** Most verbs of the fourth conjugation\* are inflected like *finire*, "to finish":—

#### Infinitive and Participles.

*Finire,*                      *finendo,*                      *finito.*

#### Indicative.

| PRESENT.          | IMPERFECT.       | PRETERITE.       | FUTURE.           |
|-------------------|------------------|------------------|-------------------|
| <i>Finisco,</i>   | <i>Finiva,</i>   | <i>Finii,</i>    | <i>Finirò,</i>    |
| <i>finisci,</i>   | <i>finivi,</i>   | <i>finisti,</i>  | <i>finirai,</i>   |
| <i>finisce,</i>   | <i>finiva,</i>   | <i>finì,</i>     | <i>finirà,</i>    |
| <i>finidmo,</i>   | <i>finivâmo,</i> | <i>finimmo,</i>  | <i>finirêmo,</i>  |
| <i>finite,</i>    | <i>finivâte,</i> | <i>finiste,</i>  | <i>finirête,</i>  |
| <i>finiscono.</i> | <i>finivano.</i> | <i>finirono.</i> | <i>finiranno.</i> |

#### Imperative.

#### Subjunctive.

#### Conditional.

|                 | PRESENT.          | IMPERFECT.        |                     |
|-----------------|-------------------|-------------------|---------------------|
| <i>Finisci,</i> | <i>Finisca,</i>   | <i>Finissi,</i>   | <i>Finirèi,</i>     |
|                 | <i>finisca,</i>   | <i>finissi,</i>   | <i>finirèsti,</i>   |
|                 | <i>finisca,</i>   | <i>finisse,</i>   | <i>finirèbbe,</i>   |
| <i>finidmo,</i> | <i>finidmo,</i>   | <i>finissimo,</i> | <i>finirèmmo,</i>   |
| <i>finite.</i>  | <i>finidte,</i>   | <i>finiste,</i>   | <i>finirèste.</i>   |
|                 | <i>finiscano.</i> | <i>finissero.</i> | <i>finirèbbero.</i> |

Though inflected like *finire* in all other parts, *dormire, fuggire,† pentire, sentire, servire, vestire* are always, *abor-*

\* Most grammars and dictionaries call this the "third conjugation."

† *Fuggire* inserts no extra *i* (see last sentence of 60).

*rire, bollire*, and verbs in *-vertire* are generally, and *assorbire, inghiottire, mentire, nutrire, tossire* are often, in the present indicative, imperative, and subjunctive, conjugated after the model below. *Partire* and *sortire* are, when transitive, inflected like *finire*, when intransitive, like *sentire*.\*

| Indicative.      | Imperative.      | Subjunctive.     |
|------------------|------------------|------------------|
| <i>Sento,</i>    |                  | <i>Senta,</i>    |
| <i>senti,</i>    | <i>Senti,</i>    | <i>senta,</i>    |
| <i>sente,</i>    |                  | <i>senta,</i>    |
| <i>sentiâmo,</i> | <i>sentiâmo,</i> | <i>sentiâmo,</i> |
| <i>sentite,</i>  | <i>sentite.</i>  | <i>sentite,</i>  |
| <i>sêntono.</i>  |                  | <i>sêntano.</i>  |

**62.** The present participle of all verbs is invariable.

Ex. : *Stavâmo parlâdo*, we were speaking.

**63.** In all conjugations a form of the first person singular of the imperfect indicative ending in *o* instead of *a* is nearly always used in conversation, and occurs often in the works of modern authors : as *leggêvo*, "I was reading."

*a.* In popular speech the first person plural of all tenses is generally replaced by the third person singular preceded by *si* : *nôî âltri si crêde*, "we believe"; *nôî si êra venûti*, "we had come"; *ci si dectse*, "we decided (ourselves)."

*b.* Final *o* of the third person plural is frequently omitted : as *pârlan di lui*, "they speak of him." Forms in *-ânno* sometimes drop *-no* : as *dirân tutto*, "they will tell everything."

*c.* The imperfect indicative endings *-avâmo, -avâte, -evâmo, -evâte, -ivâmo, -ivâte* are often pronounced *-âvamo, -âvate*, etc.

*d.* Occasionally, especially in poetry, *-at-* is omitted from the ending of the past participle of the first conjugation : *destâto* = *dêsto*.

---

\* Compounds are conjugated like their simple verbs.



## THE IRREGULAR VERB.

64. Certain parts of Italian irregular verbs are always regular: the example given below will show which they are. *Èssere* (see 53, a) is an exception to all rules.

65. Many irregular verbs that belong or once belonged to the third conjugation have the infinitive contracted (*fare* for *facere*, *dire* for *dicere*, *condurre* for *condúcere*): in this case the future and conditional are formed from this contracted infinitive (*farò*, *dirèi*, *condurrèbbe*), while the present participle, the imperfect indicative and subjunctive, and certain persons of the present and preterite are formed from the uncontracted stem (*facendo*, *diceva*, *conduciàmo*).

66. *Porre* (for *pónere*), "to put," a verb of the third conjugation, will serve to show which are the regular and which the irregular parts of irregular verbs: the forms printed in italics are regular in all verbs except *dare*, *dire*, *essere*, *fare*, *stare*; those in Roman type may be irregular.

## Infinitive and Participles.

*Porre*,                      *ponendo*,                      *pósto*.

## Indicative.

| PRESENT.         | IMPERFECT.        | PRETERITE.        | FUTURE.            |
|------------------|-------------------|-------------------|--------------------|
| <i>Póngo</i> ,   | <i>Ponéva</i> ,   | <i>Pósi</i> ,     | <i>Porró</i> ,     |
| <i>póni</i> ,    | <i>ponévi</i> ,   | <i>ponésti</i> ,† | <i>porrái</i> ,    |
| <i>póne</i> ,    | <i>ponéva</i> ,   | <i>póse</i> ,     | <i>porrà</i> ,     |
| <i>poniámo</i> , | <i>ponevámó</i> , | <i>ponémmo</i> ,† | <i>porrémo</i> ,   |
| <i>ponéte</i> ,* | <i>poneváte</i> , | <i>ponéste</i> ,† | <i>porréte</i> ,   |
| <i>póngono</i> . | <i>ponévano</i> . | <i>pósero</i> .   | <i>porráanno</i> . |

\* See 66, 4.

† See 66, 3.

| Imperative. | Subjunctive. |                   | Conditional. |
|-------------|--------------|-------------------|--------------|
|             | PRESENT.     | IMPERFECT.        |              |
| Póni,       | Pónga,       | <i>Ponéssi,*</i>  | Porréi,      |
|             | pónga,       | <i>ponéssi,</i>   | porrésti,    |
|             | pónga,       | <i>ponésse,</i>   | porrébbe,    |
| poniámo,    | poniámo,     | <i>ponéssimo,</i> | porrémmo,    |
| ponéte.     | poniáte,     | <i>ponéste,</i>   | porréste,    |
|             | póngano.     | <i>ponéssero.</i> | porrébbero.  |

It will be seen that the present participle, the imperfect indicative and subjunctive, and certain persons of the present and preterite indicative are always regular.

(1) *Dáre* and *stáre* have in the future and conditional *darò, darèi; starò, starèi*. Otherwise the only irregularity in the future and conditional is that they are contracted in many verbs even when the infinitivè is uncontracted: as *vedére*, "to see," *vedrò; ventre*, "to come," *verrèi*.

(2) From the first person singular of the preterite the other irregular persons can be constructed, the third person singular by changing the ending *i* to *e*, the third person plural by adding *-ro* to the third person singular.†

(3) The *regular* persons of the preterite and the whole imperfect subjunctive are slightly irregular in *dáre* and *stáre*, which substitute *e* for *a* in those forms (*désti, démmo, déste, déssi; stésti, stémmo, stéste, stéssi*).

(4) *Díre* (for *dícere*) and *fáre* (for *fácere*) have *díte* and *fáte* in the second person plural of the present indicative.

a. Verbs whose stem ends in *l*, *n*, or *r* often drop final *e* or *i* in the singular of the present indicative and imperative: as *non vuol andáre*, "he will not go"; *vièn qui*, "come here." See also 63, a, b, c.

\* See 66, 3.

† This rule applies only to *irregular* preterites.

b. The three forms of the imperative are exactly like the corresponding persons of the present indicative, except in *avère*, *sapère*, and *volère*, where they follow the subjunctive (*abbì, abbìamo, abbiate*; *sappi, sappiamo, sappiate*; *vogli, vogliamo, vogliate*), and in *andàre*, *dàre*, *dìre*, *fàre*, and *stàre*, which have in the singular *va', da', di', fa', sta'*.

c. The third person plural of the present indicative can always be constructed from the first person singular, from which can be formed also the whole present subjunctive except the first and second persons plural: these come from the first person plural of the present indicative. Exceptions to this rule are *andàre*, *avère*, *dàre*, *fàre*, *sapère*, and *stàre*, which have in the third person plural of the present indicative *vanno, hanno, danno, fanno, sanno, stanno*; while *avère*, *dàre*, *sapère*, and *stàre* have in the present subjunctive *abbia, dia, sappia, stia*.

67. With the aid of the above notes any verb except *èssere* can be constructed from the infinitive, the participles (the present participle often being necessary to show the uncontracted form of the infinitive), the present indicative, and the first person singular of the preterite and future. A list of irregular verbs begins on page 88.

a. In general, compound verbs not differing in conjugation from their simple verbs will be omitted from this list. All compounds of *dàre* and *fàre* are accented on the same syllable as the simple verbs: as *fa*, "he does"; *disfà*, "he undoes."

The compounds of *stàre* demand special mention: *ristàre*, *soprastàre*, *sottostàre*, *sovrastàre* are inflected like *stàre* (*ristà soprastètti, sottostanno*); *distàre* has no present participle, is regular in the present of all moods (*disto*, etc.), but otherwise is inflected like *stàre* (*distètti*, etc.); *constàre*, *contrastàre*, *instàre*, *ostàre*, *prestàre*, *restàre*, *sostàre* are regular throughout (*cònta, contrástano, instài, ostàrono, presterò, rèsti, sostàssi*).

**68.** In old Italian and in poetry both regular and irregular verbs differ in many ways from the normal types: some of the commonest variations are given below.

*a.* In the first and third persons singular and the third person plural of the imperfect indicative *v* is often dropped, but never in the first conjugation: *voléva* = *voléa* (also *volla*); *finivano* = *finiano*. Some of these forms are not uncommon in modern prose.

*b.* The conditional endings *-êi*, *-êbbe*, *-êbbero* are generally replaced in poetry by *-ta*, *-ta*, *-iano*: *crederêi* = *credertà*.

*c.* The future endings *-ò*, *-anno* are sometimes replaced by *-aggio* or *-abbo*, *-aggiono* or *-abbono*: *amerò* = *ameraggio*; *ameranno* = *ameràbbono*.

*d.* In the third person plural of the preterite *-no* or *-ono* is often dropped: *amàrono* = *amàro* or *amâr* (also *amôrno*, *amônno*). In the third person singular we find *amâo*, *credêo*, *sentto*.

*e.* Final *-ero* is often replaced by *-ono*: *avrêbbero* = *avrêbbono*.

*f.* In the first person plural final *o* is often dropped, and then the *m* sometimes becomes *n*: *andiamo* = *andiâm* or *andiân*.

*g.* In the first person plural of the present indicative *-iâmo* may be replaced by *-âmo*, *-êmo*, or *-tmo*, according to the conjugation.

*h.* Final *-iano*, wherever it occurs (also *-éano* in the imperfect), may be replaced by *-ieno* or *-ièno*: *avévano* = *avièno*.

*i.* At the end of a word we often find *e* for *i*, sometimes *i* for *e*: *pênsi* = *pênsè*; *ascoltâte* = *ascoltâti*.

*j.* *E* is sometimes added to a word ending in an accented vowel: *amò* = *amôe*.

#### EXERCISE 15.

Tânto all' andàre quânto al tornàre dâlla scuôla, Enríco dà<sup>1</sup> nôia a tútti; picchia i bambíni piú piccîni di lúi, tira i sâssi a quâlcbe pôvero câne che se ne va<sup>2</sup> tranquillaménte pel sáo viâggio, rómpe le piânte del giardíno che dêve<sup>3</sup> traversàre per andàre a scuôla o per tornàre a càsa; inisómma è un contínuo far malânni.

Il bábbò va<sup>2</sup> a lavoráre la mattína prêsto ; la mámma è maláta, e quindi non lo pòssono<sup>4</sup> accompagnáre. L' áltra mattína però gli seguì brútta. Méntre andáva a scuòla, víde<sup>5</sup> avánti a sè un bambíno piccino, tútto vestíto bène, e che paréva sólo ; Enrico, sénza far tánti discórsi, arríva di diétro, gli píglia il cappêllo e gliélo bútta in úna fónte che êra lì vicina. Il pòvero bambíno si métte a piángere, e Enríco cominciò a scappáre. Ma quèsta vòlta avéva fátto<sup>6</sup> mále i suòi cónti : il bambíno non êra sólo, lo accompagnáva un bel can barbóne. I can barbóni hánno tánto intendiménto, che fánno<sup>6</sup> áltre còse ben più meraviglióse che andáre ad accompagnáre a scuòla un bambíno. Il barbóne dúnque, cóme víde<sup>5</sup> il súo padroncino assalíto, vía diétro ad Enrico che fuggíva ; in un áttimo lo raggiúnse,<sup>7</sup> e agguantátagli úna gámbe, lo badáva a môrdere<sup>8</sup> ; Enrico urláva, ma il cáne non lo lasciò finchè un signóre, che avéva vísto<sup>5</sup> tútta la scèna, non lo minacciò col bastóne. Enríco êbbe stracciáti i calzóni, laceráta la cárne délla gámbe, e fu pòi puníto dal maêstro e daí genitóri ; ma da quel giòrno a quèsta pártè non dà<sup>1</sup> più nòia a nessúno, avèndo vedúto che un cáne stéssò gli avéva insegnáto cóme fósse mále molestáre gli áltri.

<sup>1</sup> From *ddre*, 92, 3. <sup>2</sup> *Anddre*, *anddrsene*, 92, 1. <sup>3</sup> *Dovére*, 92, 8. <sup>4</sup> *Potére*, 92, 21. <sup>5</sup> *Vedére*, 92, 10. <sup>6</sup> *Fdre*, 92, 2. <sup>7</sup> *Raggiungere*, 92, 138.

<sup>8</sup> He kept biting him.

#### EXERCISE 16.

Have you ever observed what<sup>1</sup> happens when a pot of water boils at the fire? The steam of the water rises like so-much smoke, and remains attached to the lid that covers the pot ; when this steam has begun to cool, it becomes<sup>2</sup> water once-more,<sup>2</sup> and falls<sup>3</sup> down again<sup>3</sup> drop by drop. In-like-manner<sup>4</sup> it happens with<sup>5</sup> the vapors which the sun and the heat lift from the earth. The vapors rise, collect themselves on<sup>6</sup> high in little bubbles, and thus united they form clouds.<sup>7</sup> When these clouds are very-much<sup>8</sup> charged with<sup>9</sup> moisture, they resolve themselves into water ; and

the water, falling<sup>3</sup> down again<sup>3</sup> in drops where the wind carries it, forms rain.<sup>7</sup> So<sup>10</sup> rain<sup>7</sup> is-only<sup>11</sup> steam turned-back-into<sup>12</sup> water. The cloud, too,<sup>13</sup> is-only<sup>11</sup> a quantity of steam not-very<sup>14</sup> dense and not-very<sup>14</sup> high<sup>15</sup> in the air. This vapor, by<sup>16</sup> remaining low, prevents us sometimes from-seeing<sup>17</sup> objects<sup>7</sup> even at a<sup>16</sup> small distance from us.

<sup>1</sup> *Quello che.* <sup>2</sup> To become once more = *ritornare.* <sup>3</sup> To fall again = *ricascare.* <sup>4</sup> *Medesimamente.* <sup>5</sup> *Per.* <sup>6</sup> *In.* <sup>7</sup> See 13, b. <sup>8</sup> *Molto.* <sup>9</sup> *Di.* <sup>10</sup> *Dunque.* <sup>11</sup> *Non è altro che.* <sup>12</sup> *Tornato.* <sup>13</sup> *Poi.* <sup>14</sup> *Poco.* <sup>15</sup> *Sollevato.* <sup>16</sup> *Omit.* <sup>17</sup> *Di vedere.*

## MOODS AND TENSES.

**69.** The English present participle used as subject, predicate nominative, or direct object of a verb must be rendered in Italian by the infinitive, nearly always preceded by the definite article.

Ex.: *Mi piace il viaggiare*, I like travelling.

*Rifarsiela cogli animali è da sciocchi*, taking vengeance on animals is folly.

*La nostra prima cura fu il cercare una pensione*, our first care was hunting up a boarding-house.

*Odio lo studiare*, I hate studying.

**70.** The English present participle preceded by a preposition is translated as follows: (1) If the preposition is a necessary part of the thought, it is expressed in Italian, and the English present participle is rendered by the infinitive with the definite article. This article is, however, omitted (unless it would be used in English) after the prepositions *di*, "of"; *dopo di*, "after"; *invece di*, "instead of"; *prima di*, "before"; *senza*, "without."

Ex.: *Óltre il fàre scarabocchi scrìve male*, **besides** making blots he writes badly.

*Parlò contra il trarre útile di quella disgrazia*, I spoke **against** utilizing that misfortune.

*Il vizio di fumàre*, the habit of smoking.

*Ho l'abitudine di coricarmi tardi*, I am in the habit of going to bed late.

*Invèce di dirmi tutto*, **instead of** telling me everything.

*Prima di morire*, **before** dying.

*Parliamo senza riflettere*, we speak **without** thinking.

(2) If in English the omission of the preposition, although it made the construction awkward, would not essentially change the meaning, the phrase is rendered in Italian by the present participle without any preposition.

Ex.: *Studiando si impara*, (through) studying we learn.

*Dovrei corrispondere alla sua cortesia ascoltandola*, I ought to acknowledge her courtesy (by) listening to her.

*Partendo incontrò un amico*, (on) going away he met a friend.

*Copiando non fa errori*, (in) copying he makes no mistakes.

(3) "To amuse one's self by . . ." and "to weary one's self by . . ." are *divertirsi a . . .* and *affannarsi a . . .* with the infinitive: as *si diverte a tirar sassi*, "he amuses himself throwing stones." Some other verbs often take this construction.

**71.** Following are some other rules for the use of the infinitive and participles.

a. When any verb is used as an auxiliary, the mood and tense are expressed in that verb, and not in the dependent infinitive (see 57).

Ex.: *Avrei potuto farlo*, I could have done it.

b. After *fàre*, "to make" or "to have" (= "to cause"), *sentire* and *udire*, "to hear," and *vedere* "to see," the Italian present

infinitive is used to render an English past participle. After *lasciare*, "to let," and often after the preposition *da* an Italian active infinitive is used to translate a passive one in English.

Ex.: *Si fa capire*, he makes himself understood.

*Farò fare un paio di scarpe*, I shall have a pair of shoes made.

*L'ho sentito dire*, I have heard it said.

*Lo vide ammazzare*, he saw him killed.

*Si lascia ingannare*, he lets himself be deceived.

*Non c'è niente da fare*, there is nothing to be done.

c. The Italian past participle is inflected like any other adjective. The present participle is invariable. When in English the present participle is used adjectively, without any verbal force whatsoever, it is translated, not by the participle, but by a verbal adjective, which can be formed from almost any Italian verb by changing the infinitive ending into *-ante* for the first conjugation, and into *-ente* for the others. This adjective may be used substantively. Some writers have used it as a participle.

Ex.: *Questi vasi sono rotti*, these vases are broken.

*La donna sta cucendo*, the woman is sewing.

*Stavano parlando*, they were speaking.

*Un animale parlante*, a speaking animal.

*Acqua bollente*, boiling water; *due amanti*, two lovers.

d. A whole protasis is often expressed in Italian by a present participle, or by an infinitive with *a*.

Ex.: *Andandovi lo vedrebbe*, if he went there, he would see it.

*A bucarsi esce il sangue*, if you prick yourself, blood comes.

e. Writers sometimes use, instead of a clause in indirect discourse, an infinitive followed by the word that would have been subject of the clause.

Ex.: *Disse essere questo l'uomo che cercavamo*, he said this was the man we were looking for.



**72.** In negative commands the infinitive is always used instead of the second person singular of the imperative.

Ex.: *Trovalo*, find it; *non lo trovare*, do not find it.

**73.** When an action is represented as having taken place and still continuing, the English uses the perfect or pluperfect tense, the Italian the present or imperfect.

Ex.: *Studio l'italiano da otto mesi*, I have studied Italian for eight months.

**74.** In subordinate clauses referring to the future and introduced by a conjunction of time, where the present is often used in English, the future tense must be employed in Italian.

Ex.: *Quando vi andrò, glielo dirò*, when I go there, I'll tell him.

a. The future is often used, without any idea of future time, to express probability.

Ex.: *Sarà uscito*, he has probably gone out.

*Avrà molto denaro*, he probably has a great deal of money.

**75.** The difference between the imperfect and the preterite is this: the preterite is used of an event that occurred at a definite date in the past, the imperfect is used in a description or in speaking of an accessory circumstance or an habitual action in past time — the preterite is a narrative, the imperfect a descriptive tense. The preterite perfect is used (instead of the pluperfect) only after conjunctions meaning "as soon as" (*appena che*, *subito che*, *tosto che*), and sometimes after *dopo che*, "after."\*

---

\* It is used also in phrases like: *in cinque minuti ebbe finita la lettera*, "in five minutes he had the letter finished."

Ex.: *Entrò mentre dormivamo*, he came in while we slept.  
*Facevo così ogni mattina*, I did so every morning.  
*Lo fece l'anno scorso*, he did it last year.  
*Tosto che l'ebbe visto, uscì*, as soon as he had seen it, he went.

a. In conversation the perfect is often used instead of the preterite, when the event is not remote.

Ex.: *Vi sono andato ieri*, I went there yesterday.

**76.** The conditional, like the English "should" and "would," has two uses: in indirect discourse after a principal verb in a past tense it expresses the tense which in direct discourse would be future;\* in the conclusion of a conditional sentence it is used when the protasis is (or, if expressed, would be) in the imperfect subjunctive (see **77**).

Ex.: *Disse che lo farebbe*, he said he would do it.  
*Se fosse vero lo crederei*, if it were true, I should believe it.  
*Questa casa mi converrebbe*, this house would suit me.

**77.** When a condition is contrary to fact, or consists of a more or less unlikely supposition referring to future time,† the protasis is in the imperfect (or pluperfect) subjunctive, the apodosis in the conditional;‡ otherwise both protasis and apodosis are in the indicative.

Ex.: *Se l'avessi te lo darei*, if I had it, I should give it thee.  
*Se fosse tornato l'avrei veduto*, if he had returned, I should have seen him.  
*Se venisse noi ce ne andremmo*, if he came, we should go.  
*Se vi andassi morirei*, if I should go there, I should die.

\* The perfect of the future or the conditional is sometimes used where the simple tense would be expected: *disse che non l'avrebbe fatto più*, "he said he would do it no more."

† Rendered in English by the imperfect, or by the auxiliary "should."

‡ The imperfect indicative is occasionally used to replace the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive of the protasis and the conditional of the apodosis.

*Se non è véro è ben trovato*, if it isn't true, it's a good invention.  
*Se lo fece sarà punito*, if he did it, he will be punished.

a. The missing persons of the imperative are supplied from the present subjunctive. The imperfect subjunctive is used to express a wish that is not likely to be realized.

Ex. : *Si accomodi*, be seated (sing.) ; *stiano zitti*, be quiet (plur.).  
*Sia pure*, be it so ; *vengano subito*, let them come at once.  
*Fosse pure*, would it were so !

b. When a relative clause restricts its antecedent to one of all its possible conditions or actions, the verb of that relative clause is in the subjunctive, — the present subjunctive if the verb on which it depends be present or future, the imperfect if it be past or conditional.

Ex. : *Non c'è animale più bello d'un gatto giovane che faccia il chiasso*, there is no animal prettier than a kitten that is at play.  
*Dove troverete un giovine che sposi voi*, where will you find a young man who will marry you ?  
*Vorrèi vedere un bel quadro che non fosse antico*, I should like to see a fine picture that is not old.

c. The verb of a subordinate clause depending on an impersonal verb, on a superlative, or on one of the words "first," "last," and "only" is in the subjunctive. This rule does not apply to reflexive verbs, nor to affirmative phrases meaning "it is true" or "it is because."

Ex. : *Bisognò ch'io vi andassi*, I had to go there.  
*È giusto che siano puniti*, it's right they should be punished.  
*Il più bello ch'io conosca*, the finest that I know.  
*Si vede che non è così*, you see it isn't so.  
*È véro che ci sono stato*, it's true that I've been there.

d. The subjunctive is used after all conjunctions meaning "although," "as if," "unless," "provided that," "in order that," "in such a way that" (denoting purpose), "before," "however," "whenever," "wherever," "without."

Ex.: *Benchè stia nascosto, lo troverò, dovunque sia*, although he be hidden, I shall find him, wherever he is.

*Partirò a meno che egli non venga*, I shall go unless he comes.

*Lo fece perchè lo venissi*, he did it that I might come.

*La divise in modo che le due parti fossero uguali*, he divided it in such a way that the two parts should be equal.

*Per quanto ricco egli sia*, however rich he may be.

*Aspetta finchè io torni*, wait until I return.

e. The subjunctive is used after the indefinite pronouns *qualche*, *qualunque*, *chiunque*, *cecchè*, *per quanto*.

Ex.: *Chiunque venga*, whoever comes.

*Qualunque disgrazia che succeda*, whatever misfortune happens.

*Per quante volte ci vada*, however many times I go there.

f. The verb of an indirect question is nearly always in the subjunctive when it depends on a main verb either in a past tense or in the conditional.

Ex.: *Domandano se il re è morto*, they ask whether the king is dead.

*Domandò se il padre fosse uscito*, he asked whether his father was out.

g. In a clause dependent on a verb of saying the subjunctive is used if the main verb is negative, or interrogative, or in the conditional, or in a past tense. It is generally not used, however, after an affirmative verb in a past tense when the author himself wishes to imply that the indirect statement is true.

Ex.: *Dice che la cosa è chiarissima*, he says the thing is perfectly clear.

*Non dico che questo sia vero*, I don't say this is true.

*Dissero che lo zio fosse ammalato*, they said their uncle was ill.

*Gli dissi che mi chiamava Enrico*, I told him my name was Henry.

*h.* The subjunctive is used after verbs expressing causation, concession, desire, emotion, prevention, and uncertainty: *i.e.*, after verbs of bringing about; granting, permitting; commanding, hoping, requesting, wishing; fearing, regretting, rejoicing; forbidding, hindering; being ignorant, denying, disbelieving, doubting, expecting, pretending, supposing, suspecting, thinking. But *sperare*, "to hope," very often does not take the subjunctive.

Ex.: *Non so chi siano*, I don't know who they are.

*Vorrèi che non fòsse accaduto*, I wish it had not happened.

*Supponiamo che sia provato*, let us suppose that it is proved.

*Spèro che verrà*, I hope he will come.

*i.* *Se*, "if," is occasionally omitted before an imperfect subjunctive; in this case the subject, if expressed, must follow the verb.

Ex.: *Sarèi felice ventisse egli*, I should be happy, should he come.

### EXERCISE 17.

La màmma di Alfrédo avéva lasciáto un anèllo d' òro sul cassettóne. Alfrédo vòlle<sup>1</sup> mètterselo in díto. Che giudizio! pretèndere che l' anèllo délla màmma pòssa<sup>2</sup> stáre in un ditino d' un fanciúlllo! Se lo mise<sup>3</sup> nel díto gròsso e pòi s' affacciò álla finèstra; l' anèllo cascò di sótto, e non se ne sèppe<sup>4</sup> più nùlla. La màmma cerca l' anèllo, ma non c' èra più; cerca di qui, di là, di sópra, cerca per tútto, nè l' anèllo si può<sup>5</sup> trováre. Allóra chiáma Alfrédo e gli dice<sup>6</sup>: — Bambíno, dímmi<sup>6</sup> la verità; hái présò<sup>7</sup> tu il mio anèllo? l' hái pèrso<sup>8</sup> tu? — Alfrédo, cattívo, dísse<sup>5</sup> di no. La màmma si ricordáva bène d' avérlo lasciáto nel vassoíno sul cassettóne. Non credéva Alfrédo capáce di dir le bugíe, quíndi sospettò che qualcúno l' avésse rubáto. Ci andáva in cása<sup>9</sup> úna bambína, figliuòla d' un antíco sùo servitóre, e il sospètto cádde<sup>10</sup> sópra quèsta pòvera creatúra. La màmma di Alfrédo non la vòlle<sup>1</sup> più in cása; ma l' allontanò con bèlla manièra, e nessúno si avvíde<sup>11</sup> di nùlla, perchè quèlla signóra èra buòna. Però la

bugia di Alfrédo féce<sup>12</sup> sì che súa mádre credésse ládra quélla pòvera bambína. Dío perdóni Alfrédo, Dío gl' ispíri di rimediàre a sì brútta azíone ; váda,<sup>13</sup> si bútti ái pièdi délla mámma, le raccònti tútto, e non commétta mái più di quése azionáce.

- <sup>1</sup> From *volére*, 92, 19.    <sup>2</sup> *Potére*, 92, 21.    <sup>3</sup> *Méttere*, 92, 73.    <sup>4</sup> *Sapére*, 92, 6.    <sup>5</sup> *Dire*, 92, 164.    <sup>6</sup> *Dire*: see 48, d.    <sup>7</sup> *Préndere*, 92, 87.    <sup>8</sup> *Pèrdere*, 92, 83.    <sup>9</sup> There used to come to the house.    <sup>11</sup> *Cadére*, 92, 7.    <sup>11</sup> *Avvedérsi*, 92, 10.    <sup>12</sup> *Fáre*, 92, 2.    <sup>13</sup> *Anddre*, 92, 1.

### EXERCISE 18.

We inhabit the earth ; but not all the earth has the same name everywhere : the earth is-divided<sup>1</sup> into five parts, and every part has its name. The five parts of the earth are-called<sup>1</sup> : Europe, Asia, Africa, America, Oceanica. Imagine you-cut-open<sup>2</sup> the earth in the middle and place<sup>3</sup> it on a table, in-such-a-way<sup>4</sup> that the inside shall-rest<sup>5</sup> on the table, and the outside shall-present<sup>5</sup> itself to your eyes. You will have two circles : in the circle that lies<sup>6</sup> at your right are<sup>7</sup> Europe, Asia, Africa, and a part of Oceanica ; in the circle that lies<sup>6</sup> on-the<sup>8</sup> left are<sup>7</sup> America and the other part of Oceanica. But the ancients did<sup>9</sup> not<sup>10</sup> believe that the earth was round, nor did<sup>9</sup> they know that its parts were five. They thought that the earth was flat and surrounded by the sea ; they knew, moreover,<sup>11</sup> only<sup>12</sup> three parts : Europe, Asia, Africa. They never<sup>13</sup> would have dreamed that the earth was round, and that on<sup>14</sup> the side opposite to the-one<sup>15</sup> which they inhabited there<sup>16</sup> was inhabited land. America was discovered 395 years ago by an Italian who was-called<sup>1</sup> Christopher Columbus. Christopher Columbus was-born<sup>17</sup> in a village near Genoa in 1447. His parents were poor ; his father earned hardly enough-to<sup>14</sup> support the family. However, by-dint<sup>18</sup> of sacrifices they had<sup>19</sup> him study ; and as<sup>20</sup> Christopher studied willingly, he grew up a fine<sup>21</sup> boy. When it was time<sup>22</sup> to-choose<sup>23</sup> a profession, he chose to-be-a<sup>24</sup> sailor. In<sup>8</sup> those times they believed that the world ended

after Africa ; but Columbus, on-the-contrary,<sup>25</sup> persuaded himself that the world ought<sup>26</sup> not<sup>10</sup> to<sup>26</sup> end there, and that by continuing to sail, one<sup>1</sup> ought<sup>26</sup> to<sup>26</sup> turn and come-back to the same point.

- <sup>1</sup> See 55. <sup>2</sup> *Di aprire.* <sup>3</sup> *Di posare.* <sup>4</sup> *In modo.* <sup>5</sup> See 77, d. <sup>6</sup> Use *restare.* <sup>7</sup> *C'è.* <sup>8</sup> *A.* <sup>9</sup> See 54, g. <sup>10</sup> *Non*, "not," must precede the verb. <sup>11</sup> *Poi.* <sup>12</sup> See 82. <sup>13</sup> See 83. <sup>14</sup> *Da.* <sup>15</sup> *Quella.* <sup>16</sup> *Vi.* <sup>17</sup> To be born = *ndscere*, 92, 77. <sup>18</sup> *A forza.* <sup>19</sup> Use *fare*, 92, 2. <sup>20</sup> *Perchè.* <sup>21</sup> *Bravo.* <sup>22</sup> Use def. article. <sup>23</sup> *Di scegliere.* <sup>24</sup> *Di fare il.* <sup>25</sup> *Invéce.* <sup>26</sup> See 57.

## CONJUNCTIONS, PREPOSITIONS, AND AD-VERBS.

### CONJUNCTIONS.

78. The principal conjunctions are : —

|  |   |
|--|---|
| After, <i>dopo che.</i>                            | Granting that, <i>dato che.</i>                         |
| Also, <i>anche, pure.</i>                          | However (= nevertheless), <i>però, pure.</i>            |
| Although, <i>benchè, sebbene, non ostante che.</i> | However (before an adj.), <i>qualunque, per quánto.</i> |
| And, <i>e.</i>                                     | If, <i>se</i> (rarely <i>quando</i> ).                  |
| As, <i>come, quánto</i> (after <i>tanto</i> ).     | In case, <i>caso.</i>                                   |
| As (= since), <i>siccome, poichè.</i>              | In order that, <i>perchè, acciòchè, affinché.</i>       |
| As fast as, <i>via via che.</i>                    | Much less, <i>non che.</i>                              |
| As if, <i>come se, quesi.</i>                      | Neither . . . nor, <i>nè . . . nè.</i>                  |
| As long as, <i>finchè.</i>                         | Nevertheless, <i>tuttavia, nondimèno, però.</i>         |
| As well as, <i>come anco.</i>                      | Nor, <i>nè, nemmèno, neppure.</i>                       |
| Because, <i>perchè.</i>                            | Nor . . . either, <i>nemmèno, neppure.</i>              |
| Before, <i>prima che, avanti che.</i>              | Nor even, <i>neanche, neppure.</i>                      |
| Both . . . and, <i>e . . . e.</i>                  | Not to say . . . but even, <i>non che . . . ma</i>      |
| But, <i>ma.</i>                                    | Or, <i>o, ovvero, ossia.</i>                            |
| Either . . . or, <i>o . . . o.</i>                 | Or else, <i>ossia.</i>                                  |
| Even if, <i>anche se, ancorchè.</i>                | Provided that, <i>purchè.</i>                           |
| Except that, <i>se non che.</i>                    | Rather, <i>anzi.</i>                                    |
| For, <i>chè.</i>                                   | Since (temporal), <i>dacchè.</i>                        |

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Since (causal), <i>poichè, siccome.</i>  | Too, <i>pure, anche.</i>                                   |
| So, <i>dunque, adunque.</i>  | Unless, <i>a meno che non, eccetto che non, senza che.</i> |
| So that (result), <i>di modo che, sicchè.</i>                                      | Until, <i>finchè non.</i>                                  |
| So that (= in order that), <i>perchè.</i>  | When, <i>quando.</i>                                       |
| Than, <i>che.</i>  | Whence, <i>donde.</i>                                      |
| That, <i>che.</i>  | Where, <i>dove, ove, là dove.</i>                          |
| That (= in order that), <i>perchè.</i>   | Wherever, <i>dovunque.</i>                                 |
| Then, <i>dunque.</i>   | Whether, <i>se.</i>  |
| Therefore, <i>dunque, però, perciò, adunque</i><br>(at the beginning of a clause). | While, <i>mentre, mentre che.</i>                          |

The final vowel of *anche, che, dove, neppure, and ove* is generally elided before *e* or *i*.

a. Of the above conjunctions *acciochè, affinché, a meno che non, ancorchè, avanti che, benchè, caso, come se, dato che, dovunque, eccetto che non, non ostante che, perchè* meaning "in order that," *per quanto, prima che, purchè, qualunque, quasi, sebbene, and senza che* are followed by the subjunctive. For the use of *che*, "that," with the subjunctive, see 77, c, g, h. *Come* is occasionally used for *come se*, and then it takes the subjunctive. *Finchè* when referring to the future sometimes has the sense of *finchè non*, and then it generally takes the subjunctive. *Se* is followed by the subjunctive when it introduces an indirect question or statement dependent on a verb in a past tense, or a condition contrary to fact. *Quando* meaning "if" sometimes takes the subjunctive when *se* would not. For examples, see 77, c, d, f, g, h.

b. *Che* cannot be omitted in Italian as "that" is in English: \* as *disse che fosse vero*, "he said it was true." *Se* can be omitted before an imperfect subjunctive: see 77, i.

---

\* It is omitted, however, in the following peculiarly Italian construction: *il ragazzo parèva fosse felice*, "the boy seemed to be happy"; that is, between a verb of seeming and the subjunctive dependent on it, when in English the construction would be a verb of seeming with a dependent infinitive. It is occasionally omitted also after verbs of wishing, hoping, and fearing: as *spéro mi scriva presto*, "I hope you will write to me soon."



c. *E* and *o* are often written *ed* and *od* before a vowel.

Ex.: *Mio padre ed io*, my father and I.

d. Between a verb of motion and an infinitive "and" is rendered by the preposition *a*.

Ex.: *Andrò a cercarlo*, I'll go and look for it.

e. When *anche*, "also" or "too," relates to a personal pronoun, the disjunctive form of that pronoun must follow *anche*, even if some form of the same pronoun has already been expressed.

Ex.: *Andremo anche noi*, we shall go too.

*Parte anch' egli*, he goes away too.

*Trovi anche lui*, I found him too.

*Vennero anch' essi*, they came too.

*Lo or me lo diede anche a me*, he gave it to me too.

*Ti piace anche a te*, you like it too.

## PREPOSITIONS.

79. The principal prepositions are:—

About (= approximately), *circa*.

About (= around), *intorno a*, *attorno a*.

Above, *sopra*.

According to, *secondo*.

After, *dopo*, *dopo di*.

Against, *contra*, *contro*.

Along, *lungo*.

Among, *fra*, *tra*.

Around, *intorno a*, *attorno a*.

As far as, *fino a*, *sino a*.

As for, *per*, *quanto a*, *in quanto a*.

As to, *rispetto a*.

At, *a*.

Because of, *per motivo di*.

Before (time), *prima di*, *innanzi*.

Before (place), *davanti a*, *innanzi*.

Behind, *dietro*.

Below, *sotto*.

Beside (place), *accanto a*.

Besides, beside (= in addition to), *oltre*.

Between, *fra*, *tra*.

Beyond, *oltre*, *al di là di*.

By, *da*, *accanto a* (= beside).

By means of, *per mezzo di*.

During, *durante*.

Except, *tranne*, *eccetto*, *fuori di*.

For, *per*.

From, *da*, *fin da*.

In, *in*.

In front of, *davanti a*, *innanzi*.

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Inside of, <i>dentro di</i> .                                 | Round and round, <i>tórno tórno a</i> .                      |
| Instead of, <i>invéce di</i> .                                | Since, <i>da</i> .   |
| In the midst of, <i>in mézzo a</i> .                          | To, <i>a</i> .   |
| Into, <i>in</i> .   | Toward, <i>vérso</i> .                                       |
| Near, <i>vicíno a</i> .                                       | Through, <i>per</i> .  |
| Of, <i>di</i> .   | Under, <i>sótto</i> .  |
| On, <i>su</i> (before a vowel, <i>sur</i> ), <i>sópra</i> .   | Upon, <i>su</i> (before vowels, <i>sur</i> ), <i>sópra</i> . |
| On this side of, <i>al di qua di</i> .                        | Up to, <i>fino a</i> , <i>sino a</i> .                       |
| On to, <i>su</i> (before vowels, <i>sur</i> ), <i>sópra</i> . | With, <i>con</i> .   |
| Opposite, <i>dirimpétto a</i> .                               | Within, <i>fra</i> , <i>tra</i> .                            |
| Out of, <i>da</i> , <i>di</i> , <i>fuòri di</i> .             | Within (= inside of), <i>déntro di</i> .                     |
| Outside of, <i>fuòri di</i> .                                 | Without, <i>sénza</i> .                                      |
| Over, <i>sópra</i> .  | Without (= outside of), <i>fuòri di</i> .                    |

When governing a personal pronoun *contra*, *diétro*, *dópo*, *sénza*, *sópra*, *sótto*, and often *fra* and *vérso* take *di* after them : as *sénza di me*, "without me"; *fra di lóro*, "among themselves." After *con*, *in*, *per*, a word beginning with *s* impure generally prefixes *i*\* : as *la stráda*, "the street" ; *in istráda*, "in the street."

*a*. "To" before the name of a country, after a verb of motion, is *in*.

Ex. : *Andiámo in Fráncia*, let us go to France.

*b*. "To" before an infinitive is rendered in Italian as follows : (1) After the verbs *bastáre*, "suffice"; *bisognáre*, "need"; *con-ventre*, "suit"; *desideráre*, "desire"; *dovére*, "must," "ought"; *fáre*, "make"; *lasciáre*, "let"; *parére*, "seem"; *potére*, "can," "be able"; *sapére*, "know"; *sentire*, "hear," "feel"; *solére*, "be accustomed"; *udire*, "hear"; *vedére*, "see"; and *volére*, "wish," "to" before a following infinitive is omitted. It is omitted also in exclamations and indirect questions consisting only of an interrogative and an infinitive.

---

\* Cf. 58, *a*.

Ex.: *Dovrèi capire*, I ought to understand.

*Bisogna pensarci*, it is necessary to look out for it.

*Potrèmo venire*, we shall be able to come.

*Vorrèi sapere*, I should like to know.

*Non sa che fare nè dove avvolgersi*, he doesn't know what to do nor where to turn.

(2) After verbs of accustoming, attaining, beginning, compelling, continuing, hastening, helping, learning, preparing, teaching, and after verbs of motion, "to" before a following infinitive is *a*.

Ex.: *Andranno a vederla*, they will go to see her.

*Si affrettò a rispondere*, he hastened to reply.

(3) After all other verbs it is *di*; but "to" denoting purpose or result is *per*, and "to" indicating duty or necessity is *da*.

Ex.: *Gli dissi di scrivere*, I told him to write.

*Mi è grato di dirlo*, I am happy to say so.

*Legge per divertirsi*, he reads to amuse himself.

*È troppo basso per arrivarci*, he's too short to reach it.

*Ho qualcheda da fare*, I have something to do.

c. "By" denoting the agent is *da*.

Ex.: *Fu fatto da lui*, it was done by him.

d. "In" is *in*; but when expressing future time it is *fra*.

Ex.: *Fra tre giorni sarà finito*, in three days it will be finished.

e. "For" is *per*: as *l' ha fatto per me*, "he has done it for me." But in the sense of "since," in speaking of past time, "for" is *da*. "For," meaning "during," is omitted or translated *durante*. Sentences like "it is right for him to do it" must be translated by *che* with the subjunctive: *è giusto che lo faccia*.

Ex.: *Dimora da molti anni a Firenze*, he has lived for many years at Florence (see 73).

*Resterò cinque settimane*, I shall stay for five weeks.

*Piovve durante un mese*, it rained for a month.

*Bisogna ch' io vada*, it is necessary for me to go.

f. "From" is *da*; but before adverbs and sometimes after verbs of departing it is *di*. In speaking of time it is generally *fin da*.

Ex.: *È lontano di qua*, it is far from here.

*Èsco di cda*, I go out of the house.

*Fin dal principio*, from the beginning.

g. *Da* has, in addition to the meanings "by," "from," "since," another sense hard to render in English: it may be translated "as," "characteristic of," "destined for," "such as to," or "suited to," according to the context. *Da* means also "at the house of" or "to the house of." *Da* corresponds to English "on" or "at" before the word "side," *parte*, used in its literal sense.

Ex.: *Prométto da uòmo d' onóre*, I promise as a man of honor.

*Il Salvini da Otèllo*, Salvini as Othello.

*Sarèste tanto buòno da ventre*, would you be so good as to come?

*Quèsto è da sciòcchi*, this is acting like a fool.

*Il bambino ha un giudìzio da grànde*, the child has the judgment of a grown person.

*La sala da prànzo*, the dining-room.

*Una tazza da caffè*, a coffee-cup.

*L' ho vedùto dal Signór Nèri*, I saw him at Mr. Neri's.

*Viène da me*, he comes to my house.

*Da quèsta parte*, on this side.

h. *A* is often used before a noun — not indicating material (which is expressed by *di*) nor purpose (expressed by *da*) — that describes another noun, when in English these two substantives would form a compound word.

Ex.: *Una macchina a vapóre*, a steam-engine.

*Una sedia a dònolo*, a rocking-chair.

*Uno sgabèllo a tre pièdi*, a three-legged stool.

i. *Êssere per* or *stàre per* means "to be about to."

Ex.: *Stàva per parlàre*, he was on the point of speaking.

j. In some idiomatic phrases *di* is used in Italian when another preposition would be employed in English.

Ex.: *Di giorno, di notte*, by day, by night.

*Essere contento di una cosa*, to be satisfied with a thing.

*Vivo di pane*, I live on bread.

*Che faceva delle forbici*, what did he do with the scissors?

### ADVERBS.

**80.** (1) Adverbs, unless they begin the clause, are generally placed immediately after the verb; *non*, however, always precedes the verb. When a compound tense is used, the adverb nearly always follows the past participle, but *già*, *mai*, and *sempre* usually precede it. See also **84**.

Ex.: *Non ci vado mai*, I never go there.

*Ho parlato spesso*, I have often spoken.

*Non ha sempre parlato così*, he hasn't always talked so.

(2) Adverbs are compared like adjectives (see **31**); but "better," "worse," "more," "less" are respectively *méglio*, *péggio*, *più*, *méno*.

**81.** "Yes" is *sì* or *già*: *sì* when it expresses real affirmation, *già* when it denotes passive assent. "No" is *no*. "Not" is *non*, after which a word beginning with *s* impure generally prefixes *i*. "Or not" at the end of a clause is *o no*.

Ex.: *Le piace questo tempo?* — *Sì*. — "Do you like this weather?"  
"Yes."

*Che tempaccio!* — *Già*. — "What nasty weather!" "Yes."

*Sta bene*, he is well; *non istà bene*, he isn't well.

*Sia véro o no*, whether it be true or not.

a. "What?" meaning "what do you say?" is *cóme?* *Che* and the interjection *o* are often used to introduce questions.

Ex.: *O perchè non rispondete? — Côme? — Che siete sordo, signóre?*  
— "Why don't you answer?" "What?" "Are you deaf, sir?"

b. "Very" is *mólto* (see, however, 35, a). Instead of using a word or suffix for "very," the Italians often repeat the emphasized adjective or adverb.

Ex.: *È mólto bello* or *è bellissimo*, it is very beautiful.  
*I súbi genitóri erano pòveri pòveri*, his parents were very poor.

82. "Only" may be translated by *soltánto* or *solaménte*, or by the adjective *sólo*; and it is often rendered by *non . . . che*, with the whole verb intervening, and with the word modified by "only" immediately after *che*.

Ex.: *Non ne ho compráto che due*, I have bought only two of them.

83. "Never" is *non . . . mái*, with the inflected part of the verb intervening. "Just," as an adverb of time, is *or óra*. "Early" is *prêsto*, *per têmpo*, or *di buon' óra*. "This morning" is *stamáne*; "last night" is *stanòtte*. "The day after to-morrow" and "the day before yesterday" are respectively *domán l' áltro* and *ier l' áltro*. "A week, a fortnight from to-day" are *óggi a ótto*, *a quíndici*. "Ago" is translated by *fa*, which follows the substantive of time; if this substantive is plural, "ago" may be rendered also by *sóno* (*erano* or *saránno* if the date from which time is counted be past or future).

Ex.: *Non ti ha mái vedúto*, he has never seen thee.

*Son arriváti or óra*, they have just arrived.

*Tre ánni fa*, three years ago; *quáttro giòrni sóno*, four days ago.

Ex. : *Lunedì erano due settimane*, two weeks ago Monday.  
*Domani saranno cinque mesi*, five months ago to-morrow.

**84.** "Here" and "there" when they denote a place already mentioned, and no particular stress is laid upon them, are *ci* and *vi*, which are often used in Italian when they would be superfluous in English; "there is," "there are," etc., are *c'è* or *vi è*, *ci sono* or *vi sono*, etc. (sometimes *vi ha*). *Ci*, *vi*, and also *ne*, "thence," occupy the same positions with regard to the verb, and undergo the same changes, as the pronouns *ci*, *vi*, *ne* (**48, 50**); they precede conjunctive pronouns beginning with *l* or *n*, and follow all others: *ce lo manda*, *ti ci mando*.

When emphasized, "here" is *qui* or *qua*, "there" indicating a place near the person addressed is *costì* or *costà*, and "there" denoting a point remote from both speaker and hearer is *lì* or *là*.

Ex. : *Carlo vi è tornato*, Charles has gone back there.

*Alla scuola non ci vado*, I don't go to school.

*Voi rimarrete costà, egli resterà laggiù, ed io non partirò di qui*, you will remain where you are, he will stay down there, and I shall not move from here.

a. "Here I am," "here it is," etc., are *ecco*, *eccolo*, etc.

**85.** Most adverbs of manner are formed by adding *-mente* to the feminine singular of the corresponding adjective. Adjectives in *-le* and *-re* drop their final *e* in forming the adverb. See **35, a**.

Ex. : *Francò*, frank; *francamente*, frankly.

*Felice*, happy; *felicemente*, happily.

*Piacevole*, pleasant; *piacevolmente*, pleasantly.

a. "So" meaning "it" is translated *lo*: as *lo faccio*, "I do so"; *lo crede*, "he thinks so"; *lo dicono*, "they say so."

## EXERCISE 19.

Agostino è un goloso di prima riga. Côme<sup>1</sup> vedeva dei confetti, una chicca, delle frutta, subito se le pigliava e mangiava senza permesso, anche se non erano sue. Infino i suoi compagni di scuola lo rimproveravano di questo viziaccio. La maestra pensò di punire Agostino. Un giorno, quando fu l'ora della ricreazione, tirò fuori dalla sua cassetta de' confetti, e mettendoli nel paniere d' Agostino, gli disse<sup>2</sup>: — Questi li porterai a casa alla tua sorellina. — Agostino a veder que' confetti fece<sup>6</sup> certi occhioni grossi come quelli d' un bœve. Non istava più in sè<sup>3</sup> dalla voglia di mangiare que' confetti. Era tanto goloso, che se aveva qualcosa di suo non dava nulla a nessuno; era tanto goloso, che aveva la sfacciataggine di mangiare le cose degli altri; o figuratevi dunque come si struggeva di<sup>4</sup> mangiar que' confetti ch' erano nel suo panierino. Finita la refezione, i bambini vanno<sup>5</sup> nel giardino. Appena Agostino vede che nella stanza dov' erano i panierini non c' era nessuno, sparisce dal giardino, e via a pigliare i confetti. Ma non ha finito di buttar giù il primo, che<sup>1</sup> sente un amaro, un sapore così cattivo da non poter reggere; sputa e risputa, ma l' amaro non se ne andava.<sup>5</sup> Era curioso veder Agostino disperato per quel saporaccio. E i compagni chi da un uscio, chi da un altro, e chi dalla finestra che dava sul giardino, stavano a vederlo, e a ridere di questa cêlia che la maestra aveva fatto<sup>6</sup> a quel goloso. Allora la maestra gli disse<sup>2</sup>: — Vedi, Agostino; ho fatto<sup>6</sup> fare questi confetti pieni d' assenzio apposta per te; vedi a che cosa porta l' ingordigia! Un altro bambino non ci sarebbe rimasto a<sup>7</sup> questa cêlia. — Agostino si accorse<sup>8</sup> che la signora maestra gli aveva fatta<sup>6</sup> questa cêlia per suo bene, e che se non si correggeva diventava lo zimbello di tutti.<sup>9</sup>

<sup>1</sup> When. <sup>2</sup> Dire. <sup>3</sup> He was beside himself. <sup>4</sup> He was dying to. <sup>5</sup> Anddre, anddrsene. <sup>6</sup> Fdre. <sup>7</sup> Wouldn't have been taken in by. <sup>8</sup> Ac còrgersi. <sup>9</sup> See footnote (†) on p. 69.



## EXERCISE 20.

It is related that in by-gone<sup>1</sup> times a parrot escaped from a villa. This parrot had learned to say all-the-time<sup>2</sup>: "Who's-there<sup>3</sup>? who's-there<sup>3</sup>?" Having-fled<sup>4</sup> into a wood, it was flying from one tree to another without knowing where to go. A peasant, who by chance was hunting<sup>5</sup> in that place, eyed the parrot, and having never seen any<sup>18</sup> birds before<sup>6</sup> of this sort, he was<sup>7</sup> amazed at-it,<sup>8</sup> and took<sup>9</sup> all-possible<sup>10</sup> care to aim straight with his gun, so-as-to shoot-it<sup>11</sup> and carry it to show off as a rare thing. But while the peasant was aiming, the parrot, seeing<sup>4</sup> him, repeated his usual question: "Who's-there<sup>3</sup>? who's-there<sup>3</sup>?" The-peasant's-blood-froze-in-his-veins<sup>12</sup> at those words; and lowering<sup>4</sup> his gun, and taking-his-hat-from-his-head<sup>13</sup> he hastened to reply to him, dreadfully<sup>14</sup> mortified: "Excuse-me,<sup>15</sup> for-mercy's-sake,<sup>16</sup> I took<sup>17</sup> you for a bird!"

- <sup>1</sup> *Andditi.* <sup>2</sup> Always. <sup>3</sup> *Chi c'è.* <sup>4</sup> Past participle. <sup>5</sup> *A caccia.* <sup>6</sup> *Per l'innanzi.* <sup>7</sup> *Rimase:* see 54, f. <sup>8</sup> *Ne.* <sup>9</sup> Gave himself. <sup>10</sup> *Ogni.* <sup>11</sup> *Tirargli.* <sup>12</sup> To the peasant not remained blood in-him (*addosso*). <sup>13</sup> *Levatosi di capo il cappello.* <sup>14</sup> *Tutto.* <sup>15</sup> *La scusi.* <sup>16</sup> For charity. <sup>17</sup> Had taken. <sup>18</sup> Omit.

## INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

**86.** "One," "people," "we," "you," "they," used in an indefinite sense, are rendered in Italian by the reflexive construction with *si* (see 55).

**Ex.:** *Si canta bene in Italia,* they sing well in Italy.

*Si fa così,* you do this way; *se ne parla,* people speak of it.

*Si fanno spesso queste cose,* one often does these things.

**87.** "**All**" as a substantive is *tutto* (*tutti*, etc.): as *tacevano tutti*, "all were silent." The adjective "all," "the whole" is *tutto* followed by the definite article: as *tutta la terra*, "the whole earth"; *tutto il giorno*, "all day"; *tutte le romane son belle*, "all Roman ladies are beautiful."

**88.** "**Any**," when it really adds nothing to the sense, is omitted: as *non ha libri*, "he hasn't (any) books"; *voléte vino*, "do you want (any) wine?" When, however, this redundant "any" might be replaced by "any of the," it is translated by the partitive genitive (see 12, a): as *voléte del vino*, "do you want any (of the) wine?"

"Any" used substantively in the sense of "any of it," "any of them" is *ne* (see 47, 3): as *non ne ho*, "I haven't any"; *non ne ha più*, "he hasn't any more"; *ne avéte*, "have you any?"

"Any" used adjectively and meaning "any whatsoever" is *qualúnque*: as *lo fa meglio di qualúnque áltra persóna*, "he does it better than any other person."

**89.** "**Some**," when it adds nothing to the sense, is omitted or rendered by the partitive genitive: as *voléte búrra* or *voléte del búrra*, "will you have some butter?"

"Some" meaning "some of it," "some of them" is *ne*: as *ne ha*, "he has some."

Otherwise "some" is *alcúno* or *qualche*. *Qualche* is always singular (even when the meaning is plural), and is never used substantively. Ex.: *alcúne persóne* or *qualche persóna*, "some persons"; *alcúni lo dícono*, "some say so."

**90.** "Some . . . others," "the one . . . the other," "one . . . another" are translated by *chi . . . chi*, *áltri . . . áltri*, *l' úno . . . l' áltro*, or *alcúni . . . alcúni*.

*Alcuni* used in this way is always plural. A verb whose subject is *chi* or *altri* (used in this sense) is always singular; *altri* is not used after prepositions. But *l' uno* and *l' altro* can be used in any case or number.

Ex.: *Tutti, chi più tosto, e chi meno, morivano*, all died, some sooner, some later.

*Altri cadde, altri fuggè*, some fall, others flee.

*Gli uni son buoni, gli altri cattivi*, some are good, others bad.

91. Following is a list of some other indefinite pronouns and adjectives:—

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Anybody, <i>qualcuno, qualcheuno, chichessa</i> , pronouns.                 | Neither, <i>non . . . l' uno nè l' altro, nè l' uno nè l' altro</i> , pron. or adj. |
| Any more, <i>più, ne . . . più</i> , pron.                                  | No, <i>non . . . nessuno, non . . . alcuno</i> , adj.                               |
| Anything, <i>qualchedsa</i> , pron.   | Nobody, <i>non . . . nessuno</i> , pron.  |
| Anything else, <i>altro</i> , pron.   | No more, <i>non ne . . . più</i> , pron., <i>non . . . più</i> , adj.               |
| Both, <i>tutti e due, l' uno e l' altro, ambedue</i> , pron. or adj.        | None, <i>non ne . . .</i> , pron.   |
| Certain, <i>certo</i> , adj.  | Nothing, <i>non . . . niente, non . . . nulla</i> , pron.                           |
| Each, <i>ogni, ciascuno, ognuno</i> , adj.                                  | Nothing else, <i>non . . . più niente, non . . . più nulla</i> , pron.              |
| Either, <i>l' uno o l' altro</i> , pron. or adj.                            | Others, <i>altrui</i> (see 91, d), pron.  |
| Every, <i>ogni, ciascuno, ognuno, ciascheduno</i> , adj.                    | Several, <i>parecchi</i> (fem. <i>parecchie</i> ), pron. or adj.                    |
| Everybody, <i>tutti</i> (pl.), <i>ciascheduno, ciascuno, ognuno</i> , pron. | Somebody, <i>qualcheduno, qualcuno</i> , pron.                                      |
| Everything, <i>tutto</i> , pron.  | Something, <i>qualchedsa</i> , pron.  |
| Few, a few, <i>pochi</i> (pl.), pron. or adj.                               | Such, <i>talè</i> , adj.  |
| However much, (or many), <i>per quanto</i> (-ti), adj.                      | Such a, <i>un talè</i> , adj. (but also pron. in Ital., meaning "so-and-so").       |
| Little, <i>poco</i> , pron. or adj.   | Whatever, <i>qualunque</i> (invariable), adj.                                       |
| Less, <i>meno</i> , pron. or adj.*  |   |
| Many, <i>molti</i> , pron. or adj.†   |   |
| More, <i>più</i> , pron. or adj.  |   |
| Much, <i>molto</i> , pron. or adj.  |   |

\* "Less" = "smaller" is *più piccolo*.

† "A great many" is *moltissimi*.

a. The verb used with *nessúno*, *alcúno*, *niènte*, *núlla* (meaning "no," "nobody," "nothing") must be preceded by *non*, "not," unless this pronoun or adjective precedes the verb.

Ex. : *Non ho visto nessuno*, I have seen nobody.

*Nessùn pòpolo lo possiède*, no people possesses it.

b. "Nothing" followed by an adjective is *niènte di*.

Ex. : *Non avètte niènte di buono*, you have nothing good.

c. *Ciascúno*, *ciaschedúno*, *ognúno*, *nessúno*, and *alcúno* when used adjectively are inflected like *úno* (see 14, 15).

d. *Altrúi*, "another," "others," "our neighbor," is invariable, and is not used as subject of a verb : as *con altrúi*, "with other people"; *chi áma altrúi áma sè stésso*, "he who loves his neighbor loves himself." The prepositions *di* and *a* are sometimes omitted before it : as *la móstro altrúi*, "I point her out to others"; *la vòglia altrúi*, "the will of another."

## EXERCISE 21.

Per mutàre<sup>1</sup>! Riccárdo díce<sup>2</sup> mále di qualchedúno. Che brútto vízio è mái quéllo! A sentír Riccárdo, tútti son ásini, tútti sóno cattívi; di buòni e di brávi non c'è che lúi. Ma ora-mái ognúno ha conosciúto di che pánni vèste,<sup>3</sup> e nessúno gli créde più. Se fósse brávo e buòno, si guarderèbbe dal dir mále di quèsto e di quéllo, ánche quándo ne avésse quálche ragióne. Figurátevi, dúnque, se può<sup>4</sup> éssere buòno e brávo lúi che díce mále di tútti! Sòrte, ripèto, che nessúno gli créde più, e quándo si sènte dir mále di qualchedúno, e si sa<sup>5</sup> che c'è Riccárdo di mèzzo,<sup>6</sup> ognúno si affrétta a rispòndere: Se l' ha détto<sup>2</sup> quel maldicènte di Riccárdo, non è véro núlla dicèrto.

<sup>1</sup> There he is at it again! <sup>2</sup> *Dire*. <sup>3</sup> What sort of a fellow he is. <sup>4</sup> *Potère*. <sup>5</sup> *Sapère*. <sup>6</sup> At the bottom of it.

## LIST OF IRREGULAR VERBS ARRANGED ACCORDING TO CONJUGATION.\*

**92.** This list contains no compound verbs except those which differ in conjugation from their simple verbs and those for which no simple verb exists in Italian. With every verb its irregular forms are given: in the same line with the infinitive are the present participle (if it be needed to show the original form of the infinitive), the first person singular of the preterite indicative, the past participle, and the first person singular of the future indicative (if the future be contracted); immediately below are the present indicative, the imperative, and the present subjunctive, if these parts be peculiar. For *dare* and *stare* the whole preterite and the first person singular of the imperfect subjunctive are given also. *Essere* is irregular throughout. *All tenses not mentioned are regular.* Note the following rules:—

*a.* If the present participle is given, the following forms, unless expressly mentioned, are to be constructed from its stem: all present and preterite forms with accented endings, and the whole imperfect indicative and subjunctive. If the present participle is not given, these forms, unless they be mentioned, are to be constructed from the stem of the infinitive.

*b.* Preterites in *-ai*, *-ei*, *-ti*, and *-etti* (except *detti* and *stetti*) are regular throughout. In all *other* preterites the third person sin-

---

\* Reference to these tables is facilitated by an Alphabetical List of Irregular and Defective Verbs (see page 101). Students are advised not to learn forms in parentheses nor any verbs or forms marked *rare* or *poetical*.

gular can be formed from the first person by changing final *i* to *e*, and the third person plural by adding *-ro* to the third person singular.

*c.* If the future is not given, it is to be constructed from the infinitive. The conditional always has the same stem as the future.

*d.* The imperative, when not given, is like the corresponding forms of the present indicative.

### FIRST CONJUGATION.

#### 1. Andáre, *go*, andái, andáto; andrò (anderò).

| PRES. IND.         |          | IMPER.   | PRES. SUBJ. |          |
|--------------------|----------|----------|-------------|----------|
| Vádo <i>or</i> vò, | andiámo, | Va',     | Váda,       | andiámo, |
| vái,               | andáte,  | andiámo, | váda,       | andiáte, |
| va,                | vánno.   | andáte.  | váda,       | vádano.  |

#### 2. Fáre, *do*, facêndo, féci, \* fáto; farò. See 65.

| PRES. IND.           |           | IMPER.    | PRES. SUBJ. |           |
|----------------------|-----------|-----------|-------------|-----------|
| Fáccio <i>or</i> fò, | facciámo, | Fa',      | Fáccia,     | facciámo, |
| fái,†                | fáte,     | facciámo, | fáccia,     | facciáte, |
| fa,†                 | fánno.    | fáte.     | fáccia,     | fácciano. |

#### 3. Dáre, *give*, diêdi *or* dêtti, dáto; darò. *Imp. subj.* déssi.

| PRES. IND. | PRÊT. IND.                  | IMPER. | PRES. SUBJ.            |
|------------|-----------------------------|--------|------------------------|
| Dò,        | Diêdi <i>or</i> dêtti,      |        | Día,                   |
| dái,       | désti,                      | Da',   | día,                   |
| dà,        | diêde <i>or</i> dêtte,‡     |        | día,                   |
| diámo,     | démmo,                      | diámo, | diámo,                 |
| dáte,      | déste,                      | dáte.  | diáte,                 |
| dánno.     | diêdero <i>or</i> dêttero.‡ |        | díano <i>or</i> díeno. |

\* In poetry we sometimes find a preterite *fêi*, *fêsti*, *fê* or *fêo*, *fêmmo*, *fêste*, *fêrono* or *fênno*; and an imp. ind. *fêa*, etc.

† Also *fâci*, *fâce*.

‡ Also *diè*, sing.; *diêr* or *diêro* or *diêrono*, pl.

4. Stáre (67, a), *stand*, stètti, státo; starò. *Imp. subj.* stéssi.

| PRES. IND. | PRET. IND. | IMPER.  | PRES. SUBJ.       |
|------------|------------|---------|-------------------|
| Stò,       | Stètti,    |         | Stía,             |
| stái,      | stésti,    | Sta',   | stía,             |
| sta,       | stètte,    |         | stía,             |
| stíamo,    | stémmo,    | stíamo, | stíamo,           |
| státe,     | stéste,    | státe.  | stíate,           |
| stánno.    | stèttero.  |         | stíano or stíeno. |

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

5. Avére, *have*, ébbi, avúto; avrò. *See* 53, b.\*6. Sapére, *know*, sèppi, sapúto; saprò.

| PRES. IND.    | IMPER.    | PRES. SUBJ.       |
|---------------|-----------|-------------------|
| Sò, sappíamo, | Sáppi,    | Sáppia, sappíamo, |
| sái, sapéte,  | sappíamo, | sáppia, sappíate, |
| sa, sánno.    | sappíate. | sáppia, sappiano. |

7. Cadére, *fall*, cáddi, cadúto; cadrò.

| PRES. IND.                         | PRES. SUBJ.                        |
|------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Cádo (cággio), cadiámo (caggiámo), | Cáda (cággia), cadiámo (caggiámo), |
| cádi, cadéte,                      | cáda (cággia), cadiáte (caggiáte), |
| cáde, cádono (caggiono).           | cáda (cággia), cádano (caggiano).  |

8. Dovére, *owe*, dovéi (dovétti), dovúto; dovrò. *Imperative lacking.*

| PRES. IND.                     | PRES. SUBJ.                   |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Dêvo (dêbbo or dêggio),        | Dêbba (dêva or dêggia),       |
| dêvi (dêbbi),                  | dêbba (dêva or dêggia),       |
| dêve (dêbbe),                  | dêbba (dêva or dêggia),       |
| dobbiámo (deggiámo),           | dobbiámo,                     |
| dovéte,                        | dobbiáte,                     |
| dêvono (dêbbono or dêggiono).† | dêbbano (dêvano or dêggiano). |

\* In poetry we find: *dggio*, *dbbo*, or *dio* for *ho*; *dve* for *ha*; *dggia* or *dia* for *abbia*; *êi* for *èbbi*; a future *arò*, etc., or *averò*, etc., and similar forms in the conditional.

† Also *dêo*, *dêi*, *dêe*, *dovêmo*, *dovête*, *dêono* or *dênno*.

9. Sedére, *sit*, sedéi or sedètti, sedúto.

## PRES. IND.

Siêdo or sêggo, sedíamo (seggiámo),  
 sièdi, sedéte,  
 siêde, siêdono or sêggono.

## PRES. SUBJ.

Siêda or sêgga, sedíamo (seggiámo),  
 siêda or sêgga, sediâte,  
 siêda or sêgga, siêdano or sêggano.

10. Vedére, *see*, vidi, vedúto or vísto; vedrò. Provvedére *has a future* provvederò; prevedére *has* prevederò or prevedrò. *All other compounds are like* vedére.

## PRES. IND.

Védo (véggo or véggio),  
 védi,  
 véde,  
 vediámo (veggiámo),  
 vedéte,  
 védono (véggono or véggiono).

## PRES. SUBJ.

Vêda (végga or véggia),  
 véda (végga or véggia),  
 véda (végga or véggia),  
 vediámo (veggiámo),  
 vediâte (veggiâte),  
 védano (véggano or véggiano).

11. Giacére, *lie*, giácqui, giaciúto.

## PRES. IND.

Giáccio, giacciámo,  
 giáci, giacéte,  
 giáce, giácciono.

## PRES. SUBJ.

Giáccia, giacciámo,  
 giáccia, giacciâte,  
 giáccia, giácciano.

12. Piacére, *please: like* giacére (11).13. Tacére, *be silent: like* giacére (11).14. Sqlére, *be wont, solito. No pret., fut., cond., nor imperative.*

## PRES. IND.

Sôglio, sogliámo,  
 suôli, soléte,  
 suôle, sôgliono.

## PRES. SUBJ.

Sôglia, sogliámo,  
 sôglia, sogliâte,  
 sôglia, sôgliano.

15. Dolére, *grieve*, dôlsi, dolúto; dorrò.

## PRES. IND.

Dôlgo (dôglio), dogliámo,\*  
 duôli, doléte,  
 duôle, dôlgono (dôgliono).

## PRES. SUBJ.

Dôlga (dôglia), dogliámo,\*  
 dôlga (dôglia), dogliâte,  
 dôlga (dôglia), dôlgano (dôgliano).

\* Also *dolghidmo*.



16. Rimanére, *remain*, rimási, rimásto *or* rimáso; rimarrò.

| PRES. IND. |             | PRES. SUBJ. |             |
|------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| Rimángo,   | rimaniámo,* | Rimánga,    | rimaniámo,* |
| rimáni,    | rimanéte,   | rimánga,    | rimaniáte,  |
| rimánc,    | rimángono.  | rimánga,    | rimángano.  |

17. Tenére, *hold*, ténni, tenúto; terrò.

| PRES. IND. |           | PRES. SUBJ. |           |
|------------|-----------|-------------|-----------|
| Têngo,     | teniámo,* | Tênga,      | teniámo,* |
| tiêni,     | tenéte,   | tênga,      | teniáte,  |
| tiêne,     | têngono.  | tênga,      | têngano.  |

18. Valére, *be worth*, válsi, valúto *or* válso; varrò.

| PRES. IND.      |                     | PRES. SUBJ.    |                     |
|-----------------|---------------------|----------------|---------------------|
| Válgo (váglio), | vagliámo,*          | Válga (vágli), | vagliámo,*          |
| váli,           | valéte,             | válga (vágli), | vagliáte,           |
| vále,           | válgono (vágliano). | válga (vágli), | válgano (vágliano). |

19. Volére, *wish*, vólli,† volúto; vorrò.

| PRES. IND. |           | IMPER.    | PRES. SUBJ. |           |
|------------|-----------|-----------|-------------|-----------|
| Vôglio,    | vogliámo, | Vôgli,    | Vôglia,     | vogliámo, |
| vuôli,†    | voléte,   | vogliámo, | vôglia,     | vogliáte, |
| vuôle,     | vôgliano. | vogliáte. | vôglia,     | vôgliano. |

20. Parére, *seem*, párvi, parúto *or* párso; parrò.

| PRES. IND. |                           | PRES. SUBJ. |                           |
|------------|---------------------------|-------------|---------------------------|
| Páio,      | paiámo <i>or</i> pariámo, | Páia,       | paiámo <i>or</i> pariámo, |
| pári,      | paréte,                   | páia,       | paiáte,                   |
| páre,      | páiono.                   | páia,       | páiano.                   |

21. Potére, *be able*, potéi, potúto; potrò. § *No imperative.*

| PRES. IND. |           | PRES. SUBJ. |           |
|------------|-----------|-------------|-----------|
| Pôssso,    | possíámo, | Pôssa,      | possíámo, |
| puôli,     | potéte,   | pôssa,      | possíáte, |
| può,       | pôssono.  | pôssa,      | pôssano.  |

\* Also *rimanghiámo; tenghiámo; valghidmo.*

† Also *vôlsi.*

‡ Also *vuôgli or vuôli.*

§ In poetry we find a conditional *poria.*

|| Also *puôte; pônno.*

22. Persuadére, *persuade*, persuási, persuáso. *Pres.* persuádo, etc.  
 23. Calére, *matter*, cálse, calúto. *Impersonal.* No fut., cond., nor imperative. *Not modern.*

PRES. IND.

Cále.

PRES. SUBJ.

Cágliá.

**THIRD CONJUGATION.**

*e.* All irregular verbs of the third conjugation are accented, in the singular and third person plural of the present indicative and subjunctive, on the same syllable as in the infinitive.

*f.* Verbs in *-cere* and *-gere* insert no *i* between the *c* or *g* and the *o* or *a* of the present indicative and subjunctive endings, except in the first person plural of both moods and the second person plural of the subjunctive.

*g.* See chapter on Pronunciation, 4, 8, *d.*

**PRESENT REGULAR.**

24. Accêndere, *light*, accési, accésó.  
 25. Affliggere, *afflict*, afflíssi, afflítto.  
 26. Álgere, *be cold*, álsi. *Defective. Rare.*  
 27. Allúdere, *allude*, allúsi (alludéi), allúso.  
 28. Árdere, *burn*, ársi, árso.  
 29. Arrôgere, *add*, arrôsi, arrôso or arrôto. *Defective. Rare.*  
 30. Assídere, *besiege*, assísi, assíso. *Rare.*  
 31. Assôlvère, *absolve*, assolvétti or assolvéi or assôlsi, assôlto or assóluto. *So risôlvère (determine); for sôlvère, dissôlvère, and risôlvère (dissolve), see 107.*  
 32. Assôrbere, *absorb*, assôrsi (not in use), assôrto. *Rare.*  
 33. Avèllere, *uproot*, avúlse, avúlso. *Defective. Rare.*  
 34. Chiúdere, *shut*, chiúsi, chiúso. *So all verbs in -chiúdere or -clúdere. See, however, 4, 8, d.*  
 35. Còlere, *revere*, cólto or cúlto. *Defective. Rare.*  
 36. Connéttere, *connect*, connéssi (connettéi), connéssó (connettúto). *Rare.*  
 37. Conóscere, *know*, conóbbi, conosciúto.  
 38. Conquídere, *conquer*, conquísi, conquísó. *Rare.*

39. Consumere, *consume*, consúnsi, consúnto. *Rare*. Presumere  
has also presuméi.
40. Contundere, *bruise*, contúsi, contúso.
41. Correre, *run*, córsi, córso.
42. Crescere, *grow*, crébbi, cresciúto.
43. Cuocere, *cook*, cocêndo, còssi, còtto.
44. Decidere, *decide*, decisi, decíso.
45. Difendere, *defend*, difési (difendéi), difésó.
46. Dirigere, *direct*, dirèssi, dirétto.
47. Discutere, *discuss*, discússi (discutéi), discússo.
48. Distinguere, *distinguish*, distínsi, distínto.
49. Dividere, *divide*, divísi, divíso.
50. Elidere, *elide*, elísi (elidéi), elíso.
51. Eludere, *elude*, elúsi (eludéi or eludétti), elúso.
52. Êrgere, *erect*, êrsi, êrto. *Rare*.
53. Esigere, *exact*, esigéi (esigétti), esátto.
54. Esistere, *exist*, esistéi (esistétti), esistíto.
55. Espèllere, *expel*, espúlsi, espúlso. *Rare*.
56. Esplodere, *explode*, esplòsi, esplòso.
57. Esprimere, *express*, esprèssi, espréssó. *So all other verbs in*  
*-primere. Prèmere and its compounds are regular.*
58. Fèndere, *split*, fendéi (fendétti or fèssi), fendúto or fèssó.
59. Figgere (figere), *fix*, físsi (físi), físsó (físo) or fítto.
60. Fíngere, *feign*, fínsi, fínto.
61. Fòndere, *melt*, fúsi (fondéi), fúso (fondúto).
62. Frángere, *break*, fránsi, fránto.
63. Friggere, *fry*, fríssi, frítto.
64. Genuflèttere, *kneel*, genuflèssi, genuflèssó. *Rare*.
65. Intrídere, *dilute*, intrísi, intríso.
66. Intrúdere, *intrude*, intrúsi, intrúso.
67. Invádere, *invade*, invási, invásó.
68. Lèdere, *offend*, lèsi (*not in use*), lèso. *Rare*.
69. Lèggere, *read*, lèssi, lètto.
70. Licere or lécere, *be lawful*, lécito or lícito. *Impersonal. De-*  
*fective. Poetical.*
71. Lúdere, *play*, lúsi, lúso. *Rare*.
72. Mèrgere, *plunge*, mèrsi, mèrso. *Rare*.
73. Mèttere, *put*, mèssi or mísi, mèsso.

74. Mòlcere, *soothe*, mólse. *Defective. Rare.*
75. Mòrdere, *bite*, môrsi, môrso.
76. Muòvere, *move*, movêndo, môssi, môsso.
77. Nâscere, *be born*, nâcqui, nâto.
78. Nascòndere, *hide*, nascósi, nascósto.
79. Neglîgere (see 5, Gli), *neglect*, neglêssi, neglêtto.
80. Offêndere, *offend*, offêsi, offêso.
81. Ostêndere, *show. Defective. Rare.*
82. Percípere, *perceive*, percêtto. *Defective. Rare.*
83. Pêrdere, *lose*, perdéi or perdêtti or pèrsi, perdúto or pèrso.
84. Piòvere, *rain*, piòvve (piovè), piovúto. *Impersonal.*
85. Pòrgere, *present*, pòrsi, pòrto.
86. Predilîgere, *prefer*, predilêssi, predilêtto.
87. Prêndere, *take*, prési, préso.
88. Protêggere, *protect*, protêssi, protêtto.
89. Râdere, *shave*, râsi (radéi), râso.
90. Redîmere, *redeem*, redênsi (rediméi), redênto.
91. Rêggere, *support*, rêssi, rêtto.
92. Rêndere, *render*, rési (rendéi or rendêtti), réso (rendúto).
93. Rîdere, *laugh*, rîsi, rîso.
94. Riflêtere, *reflect*, riflêttéi or riflêssi, riflêttúto or riflêssso. Riflêtere, "to reflect light," is generally irregular; riflêtere, "to meditate," is usually regular.
95. Rifûlgere, *shine*, rifûlsi. *Past part. lacking. Poetical.*
96. Rilúcere, *shine*, rilússi or rilucéi. *Past part. lacking.*
97. Rispòndere, *answer*, rispósi, rispósto.
98. Ródere, *gnaw*, rósi, róso.
99. Rómpere, *break*, rúppi, róttö.
100. Scéndere, *descend*, scési, scéso.
101. Scîndere, *sever*, scindéi or scîssi, scîsso.
102. Sciòlvere, *breakfast*, sciòlsi or sciolvêtti, sciòlto. *Rare.*
103. Scòrgere, *perceive*, scòrsi, scòrto.
104. Scrîvere, *write*, scrîssi, scrîtto.
105. Scuòtere, *shake*, scotêndo, scòssi, scòsso.
106. Soffòlcere, *support*, soffòlse, soffòlto. *Defective. Rare.*
107. Sòlvere, *undo*, solvéi (solvêtti), solúto. *Poetical. So dissòlvere; for assòlvere and risòlvere (determine), see 31.*
108. Sòrgere, *rise*, sòrsi, sòrto.

109. Sospèndere, *suspend*, sospési, sospéso. *So appèndere, impèndere*; pèndere *is reg.*, dipèndere *either reg. or irreg.*
110. Spàndere, *spill*, spandéi or spandètti, spànto.
111. Spàrgere, *scatter*, spàrsi, spàrso or spàrto.
112. Spèndere, *spend*, spési, spéso.
113. Spèrgere, *disperse*, spèrsi, spèrso. *Rare.*
114. Spòrgere, *project*, spòrsi, spòrto.
115. Strúggere, *melt*, strússi, strútto.
116. Succèdere, *happen*, succèssi or succedéi, succèssso or succedúto. *So concèdere, which has also concedètti; cèdere and its other compounds are generally regular.*
117. Sùggere, *suck*, suggéi or sússi. *Past part. lacking. Rare.*
118. Tèndere (*transitive*), *extend*, tési, téso. *The intrans. verb is reg., but has no past participle.*
119. Tèrgere, *wipe*, tèrsi or tergéi, tèrso. *Rare.*
120. Tòrcere, *twist*, tòrsi, tòrto.
121. Uccidere, *kill*, uccísi, ucciso.
122. Vín cere, *conquer*, vínsi, vínto.
123. Vív ere, *live*, víssi, vissúto or vivúto; viverò or vivrò.
124. Vòlgere, *turn*, vòlsi, vòlto.
125. Vòlv ere, *turn*, vòlsi, vòlto. *Rare. Devòlv ere has a past part. devolúto.*

## PRESENT IRREGULAR.

126. Êssere, *be*, fùì, státo; sarò. *See 53, a.\**
127. Bére or bévere, *drink*, bevèndo, bévvi (bevètti or bevéi), bevúto (beúto); berò or beverò.

## PRES. IND.

Bévo or béo, beviámo or beiámo,  
 bévi or béi, bevéte or beéte,  
 béve or bée, bévono or béono.

## PRES. SUBJ.

Béva or béa, beviámo or beiámo,  
 béva or béa, beviáte or beiáte,  
 béva or béa, bévano or béano.

\* In the imperfect indicative *êramo* is often used for *eravámo*. We find in poetry: *sête* for *siête*; *ênno* or *en* for *sóno* (third plur.); *sie* for *sia*; *erdmo*, *erdte* for *eravámo*, *eraváte*; *u* for *o* in the preterite and imperfect subjunctive; *fôro* for *fûrono*; *fia*, *fiano* or *fieno*, for *sarà*, *sarânno*; *fôra*, *fôrano* for *sarèi*, *sarèbbe*, *sarèbbero*; *sèndo* for *essèndo*; *súto*, *èssúto*, or *issúto* for *státo*.

128. Chiêdere, *ask*, chiêsi (chiési *or* chiedéi), chiêsto.

## PRES. IND.

Chiêdo (chiêggo),\*  
chiêdi,  
chiêde,  
chiediâmo,  
chiedête,  
chiêdono (chiêggonno).\*

## PRES. SUBJ.

Chiêda (chiêgga),\*  
chiêda (chiêgga),  
chiêda (chiêgga),  
chiediâmo,  
chiediâte,  
chiêdano (chiêggano).\*

129. Condúrre, *conduct*, conducêndo, condússi, condótto; condurrò.

## PRES. IND.

Condúco, conduciâmo,  
condúci, conducête,  
condúce, condúcono.

## PRES. SUBJ.

Condúca, conduciâmo,  
condúca, conduciâte,  
condúca, condúcano.

130. Nuòcere, *harm*, nocêndo, nòcqui, nociúto.

## PRES. IND.

Nuòco *or* nòccio, nociâmo,  
nuòci, nocête,  
nuòce, nuòcono *or* nòcciono.

## PRES. SUBJ.

Nuòca *or* nòccia, nociâmo,  
nuòca *or* nòccia, nociâte,  
nuòca *or* nòccia, nuòcano *or* nòcciano.

131. Pórre, *put*, ponêndo, pòsi, pósto; porrò.

## PRES. IND.

Póngo, poniâmo (ponghiâmo),  
póni, ponête,  
póne, póngono.

## PRES. SUBJ.

Póngà, poniâmo (ponghiâmo),  
póngà, poniâte,  
póngà, póngano.

132. Trárre (tráere), *drag*, traêndo, trássi, trátto; trarrò.

## PRES. IND.

Trággo, traiâmo *or* traggiâmo,†  
trái (trággi), traête,  
tráe (trágge), trággono.

## PRES. SUBJ.

Trágga, traiâmo *or* traggiâmo,†  
trágga, traiâte,  
trágga, trággono.

133. Vèllere (vêrre), *tear up*, vèlsi, vèlto; vellerò (verrà *or* velgerò).  
Vèllere, *which is rare, has not all the forms given here; but its compound, svèllere, has them all.*\* Also *chiêggio*, *chiêggiono*, *chiêggia*, *chiêggiano*.† Also *tragghiâmo*.

## PRES. IND.

Vèllo *or* vèlgo, velliámo (velgiámo),  
 vèlli (vèlgi), velléte,  
 vèlle (vèlge), vèllono *or* vèlgono.

## PRES. SUBJ.

Vèlla *or* vèlga, velliámo (velgiámo),  
 vèlla *or* vèlga, velliáte (velgiáte),  
 vèlla *or* vèlga, vèllano *or* vèlgano.

134. Cògliere (còrre), *gather*, còlsi, còlto ; coglierò *or* corrò.

## PRES. IND.

Còlgo (còglío), cogliámo (colghiámo),  
 cògli, cogliète,  
 còglie, còlgono (cògliono).

## PRES. SUBJ.

Còlga (còglia), cogliámo (colghiámo),  
 còlga (còglia), cogliáte,  
 còlga (còglia), còlgano (cògliano).

135. Scégliere (scérre), *choose: like* cògliere (134).

136. Sciògliere (sciòrre), *untie: like* cògliere (134).

137. Tògliere (tòrre), *take: like* cògliere (134).

138. Giúngere (giúgnere), *to arrive*, giúnsi, giúnto ; giungerò (giugnerò).

## PRES. IND.

Giúngo (giúgno),  
 giúngi (giúgni),  
 giúnge (giúgne),  
 giungiámo (giugniámo),  
 giungéte (giugnéte),  
 giúngono (giúgnono).

## PRES. SUBJ.

Giúnga (giúgna),  
 giúnga (giúgna),  
 giúnga (giúgna),  
 giungiámo (giugniámo),  
 giungiáte (giugniate),  
 giúngano (giúgnano).

139. Cíngere (cìgnere), *gird: like* giúngere (138).

140. Múgnere (múngere), *milk: like* giúngere (138).

141. Piángere (piágnere), *weep: like* giúngere (138).

142. Píngere (pígnere), *paint: like* giúngere (138).

143. Púngere (púgnere), *prick: like* giúngere (138).

144. Spègnere (spèngere), *extinguish: like* giúngere (138), *except that the forms with gn are as common as those with ng.*

145. Spíngere (spígnere), *push: like* giúngere (138).

146. Stríngere (strígnere), *bind: like* giúngere (138), *except that the past part. is strétto or strínto.*

147. Tíngere (tígnere), *dye: like* giúngere (138).

148. Úngere (úgnere), *anoint: like* giúngere (138).

# FOURTH CONJUGATION.

## PRESENT REGULAR.

149. Apríre, *open*, apríi or apêrsi, apêrto. *Pres.* ápro, *etc.*  
 150. Copríre (cuopríre), *cover*, copríi or copêrsi, copêrto. *Pres.* còpro (cuòpro), *etc.*  
 151. Offríre (offerire), *offer*, offríi (offeríi) or offêrsi, offêrto. *Pres.* òffro (offerísco), *etc.*  
 152. Soffríre, *suffer*: like offríre (151).  
 153. Convertíre, *convert*, convertíi or convêrsi, convertíto or convêrso. *Pres.* convêrto or convertísco, *etc.* *All other verbs in -vertíre are reg.*  
 154. Costruíre (construíre), *construct*, co(n)strússi or co(n)struíi, co(n)struíto or co(n)strútto. *Pres.* co(n)strúisco, *etc.*  
 155. Digeríre, *digest*, digeríi, digerito (digêsto). *Pres.* digerísco, *etc.*  
 156. Esauríre, *exhaust*, esauríi, esauríto or esáuisto. *Pres.* esaurísco, *etc.*  
 157. Seppellíre or sepellíre, *bury*, sep(p)ellíi, seppellíto or sepólto. *Pres.* sep(p)ellísco, *etc.*

## PRESENT IRREGULAR.

158. Cucíre, *sew*, cucíi, cucíto. *Pres.* cúcio or cucísco. *This verb inserts i before o and a, but not before e and i.*  
 159. Sdrucíre or sdruscíre, *rip*: like cucíre (158).  
 160. Empíre or émpiere, *fill*, empiêndo, empiíi, empiíto. *All but the present from the stem of empiíre. So compíre or cómpiere, which has also a past part. compíuto.*

### PRES. IND.

Émpio (empísco), empiámo,  
 émpi (empísci), empiíte,  
 émpie (empísce), émpiono (empíscono).

### PRES. SUBJ.

Émpia, empiámo,  
 émpia, empiáte,  
 émpia, émpiano.

161. Moríre, *die*, moríi, mórto; morrò or morirò.

### PRES. IND.

Muðio (muðro), moriámo or muoiámo,  
 muðri or muði, moríte,  
 muðre, muðiono (muðrono).

### PRES. SUBJ.

Muðia (muðra), moriámo or muoiámo,  
 muðia (muðra), muoiáte,  
 muðia (muðra), muðiano (muðrano).\*

\* In all forms where *uo* occurs, it may be replaced by *o*.



162. Seguire, *follow*, seguiti, seguito. Pres. sêguo, etc. The verb is generally regular; but the ê may be changed to iê in all forms where it is accented. Proseguire has -sêguo or -seguisco.

163. Sparire, *disappear*, spariti or spârvi, sparito. Pres. (regular) sparisco, etc. Apparire has appârvi or -si or -li, apparito or appârso; comparire has compârvi or -si or -li, compârso; otherwise they are like sparire, but they have in the present the additional forms: -pâio, -pâre, -pâiono; -pâia, -pâiano.

164. Dire, *say*, dicêndo, dissi, détto; dirò. See 65.

| PRES. IND. |          | IMPER.   | PRES. SUBJ. |          |
|------------|----------|----------|-------------|----------|
| Dico,      | diciâmo, | Di',     | Dica,       | diciâmo, |
| dîci,      | dîte,    | diciâmo, | dîca,       | diciâte, |
| dîce,      | dîcono.  | dîte.    | dîca,       | dîcano.  |

165. Salire, *ascend*, saliti or sâliti, salito.

| PRES. IND.       |                       | PRES. SUBJ.      |                       |
|------------------|-----------------------|------------------|-----------------------|
| Sálgo (salisco), | saliâmo or sagliâmo,* | Sálga (salisca), | saliâmo or sagliâmo,* |
| sáli (salisci),  | salîte,               | sálga (salisca), | sagliâte,             |
| sále (salisce),  | sálgono (saliscono).  | sálga (salisca), | sálgano (saliscano).  |

166. Venire, *come*, venni, venúto; verrò.

| PRES. IND.     |                    | PRES. SUBJ.    |                    |
|----------------|--------------------|----------------|--------------------|
| Vêngo (vêgno), | veniâmo,*          | Vênga (vêgna), | veniâmo,*          |
| viêni,         | venîte,            | vênga (vêgna), | veniâte,           |
| viêne,         | vêngono (vêgnono). | vênga (vêgna), | vêngano (vêgnano). |

167. Udire, *hear*, uditi, udíto; udirò (udirò).

| PRES. IND. |         | PRES. SUBJ. |         |
|------------|---------|-------------|---------|
| Ôdo,       | udiâmo, | Ôda,        | udiâmo, |
| ôdi,       | udîte,  | ôda,        | udiâte, |
| ôde,       | ôdono.  | ôda,        | ôdano.  |

168. Uscire (escire), *go out*, usciti, uscíto.

| PRES. IND. |          | PRES. SUBJ. |          |
|------------|----------|-------------|----------|
| Êsco,      | usciamo, | Êsca,       | usciamo, |
| êsci,      | uscíte,  | êsca,       | usciate, |
| êsce,      | êscano.  | êsca,       | êscano.  |

169. Oríre, *be born*, ôrto. Defective. Rare.

\* Also *salghiâmo; venghiâmo*.

## ALPHABETICAL LIST OF IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE VERBS.

**93.** Every irregular verb in this list is followed by a number referring to the table of Irregular Verbs arranged according to Conjugation. Obsolete defective verbs that present no irregularity have not been mentioned.

*a.* Compound verbs have, in general, been excluded from this list, unless they differ in conjugation from the simple verbs from which they come (see **67**, *a*). The commonest prefixes are: *a-* (corresponding in meaning to the preposition *a*); *as-* (= Latin *abs-*); *co-*, *com-*, *con-*, *cor-* (= prep. *con*); *contra-* (= prep. *cóntra*); *de-*, *di-* (= Lat. *de-*); *dis-* (= Lat. *dis-*); *e-*, *es-* (= Lat. *ex*); *i-*, *im-*, *in-*, *ir-* (= prep. *in*); *o-* (= Lat. *ob*); *per-* (= prep. *per*); *pre-* (= Lat. *prae-*); *pro-* (= Lat. *pro-*); *r-*, *re-*, *ri-* (= Lat. *re-*); *s-* (= Lat. *ex-* or *dis-*); *so-*, *sos-*, *su-* (= Lat. *sub*); *sopra-*, *sopr-*, *sor-* (= prep. *sópra*); *sott-*, *sotto-* (= prep. *sótto*); *stra-* (= Lat. *extra*); *tra-* (= prep. *tra*). After several of these prefixes the initial consonant of the simple verb is generally found doubled: *a* + *cadére* = *accadére*. *S-* is sometimes combined with *con-*, *r-* with *a-* or *in-*: *scoscéndere*, *raccógliere*, *rincórrere*.

Accadére, *see* cadére, 7.

Accéndere, 24.

Acclúdere, *see* chiúdere, 34.

Accórgere, *see* scórgere, 103.

Acquisíre *has only* acquisíto.

Addúrre, *see* condúrre, 129.

Affliggere, 25.

Álgere, 26.

Allúdere, 27.

Ancídere, *see* uccídere, 121.

Andáre, 1.

Annéttere, *see* connéttere, 36.

Antepórrre, *see* pórrre, 131.

Antivedére, *p.p. only* antivedúto,  
*otherwise like* vedére, 10.

Apparíre, *see* sparíre, 163.

Appartenére, *see* tenére, 17.

Appéndere, *see* sospéndere, 109.

Apríre, 149.

Árdere, 28.

- Arrôgere, 29.  
 Ascendere, *see* scendere, 100.  
 Asciôlvère, *see* sciôlvère, 102.  
 Ascôndere, *see* nascôndere, 78.  
 Aspêrgere, *see* spêrgere, 113.  
 Assalîre, *see* salîre, 165.  
 Assîdere, 30.  
 Assistere, *see* esîstere, 54.  
 Assôlvère, 31.  
 Assôrbere, 32.  
 Assûmere, *see* consûmere, 39.  
 Avêllere, 33.  
 Avêre, 5.  
 Bére, 127.  
 Bévere, *see* bére, 127.  
 Cadêre, 7.  
 Calêre, 23.  
 Cêdere, *generally reg., sometimes has pret. cêssi, p.p. cêssô.*  
 Chiêdere, 128.  
 Chiâdere, 34.  
 Cîgnere, *see* cîngere, 139.  
 Cîngere, 139.  
 Circoncîdere, *see* decîdere, 44.  
 Côgliere, 134.  
 Coincîdere, *reg. verb, has no p.p.*  
 Côlère, 35.  
 Collâdere, *see* lâdere, 71.  
 Comparîre, *see* sparîre, 163.  
 Compêtere, *reg. verb, has no p.p.*  
 Cômpiere, *see* empîre, 160.  
 Compîre, *see* empîre, 160.  
 Comprîmere, *see* esprimere, 57.  
 Concêdere, *see* succêdere, 116.  
 Conclâdere, *see* chiâdere, 34.  
 Concûtere, *see* discûtere, 47.  
 Condûrre, 129.  
 Connêttère, 36.  
 Conôscere, 37.  
 Conquîdere, 38.  
 Consîstere, *see* esîstere, 54.  
 Constâre *is reg.*  
 Constrûire, *see* costrûire, 154.  
 Consûmere, 39.  
 Contêndere, *see* têndere, 118.  
 Contrastâre *is reg.*  
 Controvêrtère, *see* Vêrtère.  
 Contûndere, 40.  
 Convêrgere, *reg. verb, has no p.p.*  
 Convertîre, 153.  
 Coprîre, 150.  
 Côrre, *see* côgliere, 134.  
 Côrrere, 41.  
 Corrispôndere, *see* rispôndere, 97.  
 Cospârgere, *see* spârgere, 111.  
 Cospêrgere, *see* spêrgere, 113.  
 Costrûire, 154.  
 Créscere, 42.  
 Cucîre, 158.  
 Cuôcere, 43.  
 Cuoprîre, *see* coprîre, 150.  
 Dâre, 3.  
 Decîdere, 44.  
 Dedûrre, *see* condûrre, 129.  
 Delînquere, *reg. verb, has no p.p., and its pret., delinquêtti, is rare.*  
 Deprimere, *see* esprimere, 57.  
 Desîstere, *see* esîstere, 54.  
 Devôlvère, *see* vôlvère, 125.  
 Difêndere, 45.  
 Digerîre, 155.  
 Dipêndere, *see* sospêndere, 109.  
 Dîre, 164.  
 Dirîgere, 46.  
 Dirîmere, *reg. verb, has no p.p.*  
 Discêndere, *see* scêndere, 100.  
 Discûtere, 47.  
 Dispêrgere, *see* spêrgere, 113.  
 Dissôlvère, *see* sôlvère, 107.  
 Dissuadêre, *see* persuadêre, 22.

Distàre, *reg. in pres. of all moods, no pres. p., otherwise like stàre, 4.*

Distíngere, 48.

Distrúggere, *see strúggere, 115.*

Divedere, *has nothing but infin.*

Divèrgere, *reg. verb, has no p.p.*

Dividere, 49.

Dolere, 15.

Dovère, 8.

Elèggere, *see lèggere, 69.*

Elfdere, 50.

Elfdere, 51.

Émpiere, *see empíre, 160.*

Empíre, 160.

Èrgere, 52.

Erígere, *see dirígere, 46.*

Esauríre, 156.

Escíre, *see uscíre, 168.*

Esclúdere, *see chiúdere, 34.*

Esígere, 53.

Esímere, *reg. verb, has no p.p.*

Esístere, 54.

Espèllere, 55.

Esplòdere, 56.

Esprímere, 57.

Èssere, 126.

Estíngere, *see distíngere, 48.*

Evádere, *see invádere, 67.*

Fàre, 2.

Fèndere, 58.

Fèrvere, *reg. verb, has no p.p., and is rare except in the third pers. of the pres. and imp. ind.*

Fígere, *see fíggere, 59.*

Fíggere, 59.

Fíngere, 60.

Fóndere, 61.

Frángere, 62.

Fríggere, 63.

Genuflèttere, 64

Giacére, 11.

Gíre, *defect. : pres. giámo, gíte; imp. gíva or gía, etc.; imper. giámo, gíte; pres. subj. giámo, giáte; no pres. p.; rest reg.*

Giúgnere, *see giúngere, 138.*

Giúngere, 138.

Illádere, *see ládere, 71.*

Impèllere, *see espèllere, 55.*

Impèndere, *see sospèndere, 109.*

Imprímere, *see esprímere, 57.*

Incídere, *see decídere, 44.*

Inclúdere, *see chiúdere, 34.*

Incútere, *see discútere, 47.*

Indúrre, *see condúrre, 129.*

Insístere, *see esístere, 54.*

Instàre *is reg.*

Instruíre, *see construíre, 154.*

Intèndere, *see tèndere, 118.*

Intercèdere, *see succèdere, 116.*

Intridere, 65.

Introdúrre, *see condúrre, 129.*

Intrádere, 66.

Invádere, 67.

Invalére, *p.p. only inválso, otherwise like valére, 18.*

Íre, *defect. : pres. íte; imp. íva, etc.; pret. ísti, íste, íro; fut. írèmo, írète, íránno; imper. íte; imp. subj. ísse, íste, íssero; p.p. íto.*

Istruíre, *see costruíre, 154.*

Lécere, *see lícere, 70.*

Lèdere, 68.

Lèggere, 69.

Lícere, 70.

Lúcere, *reg. verb, has no p.p.*

Lúdere, 71.

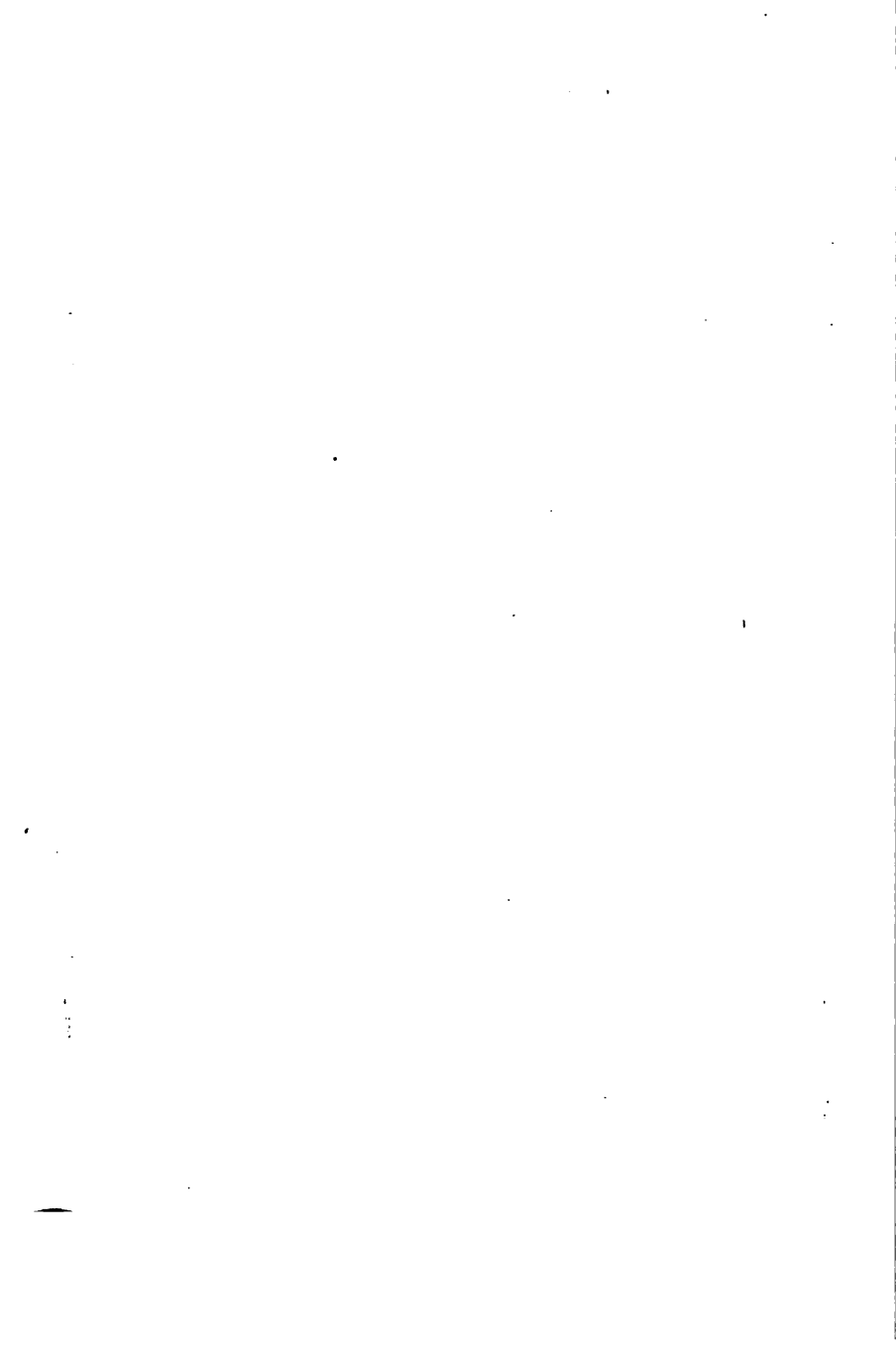
Mantenére, *see tenére, 17.*

Mèrgere, 72.

Méttere, 73.

- Mòlcere, 74.  
 Mòrdere, 75.  
 Moríre, 161.  
 Múgnere, 140.  
 Múngere, *see* múgnere, 140.  
 Muòvere, 76.  
 Nàscere, 77.  
 Nascóndere, 78.  
 Neglígere, 79.  
 Nuócere, 130.  
 Offèndere, 80.  
 Offeríre, *see* offríre, 151.  
 Offeríre, 151.  
 Opprímere, *see* esprímere, 57.  
 Oríre, 169.  
 Ostáre *is reg.*  
 Ostèndere, 81.  
 Parére, 20.  
 Percípere, 82.  
 Percuótere, *see* scuótere, 105.  
 Pèrdere, 83.  
 Permanére, *see* rimanére, 16.  
 Persístere, *see* esístere, 54.  
 Persuadére, 22.  
 Piacére, 12.  
 Piágnere, *see* piángere, 141.  
 Piángere, 141.  
 Pígnere, *see* píngere, 142.  
 Píngere, 142.  
 Piòvere, 84.  
 Pòrgere, 85.  
 Pórrre, 131.  
 Pospórrre, *see* pórrre, 131.  
 Possedére, *see* sedére, 9.  
 Potére, 21.  
 Precídere, *see* decídere, 44.  
 Preclúdere, *see* chiúdere, 34.  
 Predilígere, 86.  
 Prèmere *is reg.*  
 Prèndere, 87.  
 Prestáre *is reg.*  
 Presúmere, *see* consúmere, 39.  
 Prevedére, *see* vedére, 10.  
 Prodúrre, *see* condúrre, 129.  
 Protèggere, 88.  
 Provvedére, *fut. ana cond. uncontracted, otherwise like vedére, 10.*  
 Prúdere, *reg. verb, has no p.p., and is used only in the third pers.*  
 Púgnere, *see* píngere, 143.  
 Púngere, 143.  
 Raccògliere, *see* cògliere, 134.  
 Rádere, 89.  
 Raggiúngere, *see* giúngere, 138.  
 Recídere, *see* decídere, 44.  
 Redímere, 90.  
 Règgere, 91.  
 Rèndere, 92.  
 Repèllere, *see* espèllere, 55.  
 Reprímere, *see* esprímere, 57.  
 Resístere, *see* esístere, 54.  
 Restáre *is reg.*  
 Rídere, 93.  
 Ridúrre, *see* condúrre, 129.  
 Riflèttere, 94.  
 Rifúlgere, 95.  
 Rilúcere, 96.  
 Rimanére, 16.  
 Risòlvere (*dissolve*), *see* sòlvere, 107.  
 Risòlvere (*determine*), *see* assòlvere, 31.  
 Rispóndere, 97.  
 Ristáre, *see* stáre, 4.  
 Risúmere, *see* consúmere, 39.  
 Ródere, 98.  
 Rómpere, 99.  
 Salíre, 165.  
 Sapére, 6.  
 Scégliere, 135.  
 Scèndere, 100.  
 Scérre, *see* sciégliere, 135.

- Scîndere, 101.  
 Sciôgliere, 136.  
 Sciôlvere, 102.  
 Sciôrre, *see* sciôgliere, 136.  
 Scommettere, *see* mëttere, 73.  
 Scopîre, *see* copîre, 150.  
 Scôrgere, 103.  
 Scrîvere, 104.  
 Scuôtere, 105.  
 Sdrucîre, 159.  
 Sdruscîre, *see* sdrucîre, 159.  
 Sedêre, 9.  
 Sedûrre, *see* condûrre, 129.  
 Segûîre, 162.  
 Seppellîre, *see* seppellîre, 157.  
 Seppellîre, 157.  
 Soffîrîre, *see* soffîrîre, 152.  
 Soffôlcere, 106.  
 Soffîrîre, 152.  
 Solêre, 14.  
 Sôlvere, 107.  
 Sopprimere, *see* esprîmere, 57.  
 Soprastâre, *see* stâre, 4.  
 Sôrgere, 108.  
 Sospêndere, 109.  
 Sostâre *is reg.*  
 Sottostâre, *see* stâre, 4.  
 Sovrastâre, *see* stâre, 4.  
 Spândere, 110.  
 Spârgere, 111.  
 Sparîre, 163.  
 Spêgnere, 144.  
 Spêndere, 112.  
 Spêngere, *see* spêgnere, 144.  
 Spêrgere, 113.  
 Spîgnere, *see* spîngere, 145.  
 Spîngere, 145.  
 Spôrgere, 114.  
 Stâre, 4.  
 Strîdere, *reg. verb, has no p.p.*  
 Strîgnere, *see* stringere, 146.  
 Strîngere, 146.  
 Strâggere, 115.  
 Subîre *is reg.: pres. subîsco.*  
 Succêdere, 116.  
 Sâggere, 117.  
 Sussîstere, *see* esîstere, 54.  
 Svêllere, *see* vêllere, 133.  
 Tacêre, 13.  
 Têndere (*trans.*), 118. [ *p.p.*  
 Têndere (*intrans.*), *reg. verb, has no*  
 Tenêre, 17.  
 Têrgere, 119.  
 Tîgnere, *see* tîngere, 147.  
 Tîngere, 147.  
 Tôgliere, 137.  
 Tôrcere, 120.  
 Tôrre, *see* tôgliere, 137.  
 Tradûrre, *see* condûrre, 129.  
 Trâere, *see* trârre, 132.  
 Transîgere, *see* esîgere, 53.  
 Trârre, 132.  
 Uccidere, 121.  
 Udîre, 167.  
 Úgnere, *see* úngere, 148.  
 Úngere, 148.  
 Uscîre, 168.  
 Valêre, 18.  
 Vedêre, 10.  
 Vêllere, 133.  
 Venîre, 166.  
 Vêrre, *see* vêllere, 133.  
 Vêrtere, *reg. verb, is used only in the*  
*pres. and imp.*  
 Vilipêndere, *see* sospêndere, 109.  
 Vîncere, 122.  
 Vîvere, 123.  
 Volêre, 19.  
 Vôlgere, 124.  
 Vôlvere, 125.



## ITALIAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

- A**, to, at, in.  
**A'**, **ái**, **al**, *etc.* = **a** + *art.*  
**Abbellíto**, beautified.  
**Accompagnáre**, accompany.  
**Accôrgersi**, perceive.  
**Ácqua**, water.  
**Ad**, *see A.*  
**Affacciársi**, place one's self (*at a window*).  
**Affrettáre**, hasten.  
**Agguantáre**, seize.  
**Agostíno**, Gus.  
**Álbero**, tree.  
**Ále**, wing.  
**Alétta**, little wing.  
**Alettína**, little wing.  
**Alfrédo**, Alfred.  
**Allontanáre**, send off.  
**Allóra**, then.  
**Áltro**, other.  
**Amáro**, bitter.  
**Ánche**, also, even.  
**Andár**, *see Andáre*.  
**Andáre**, go, to go, going.  
**Andársene**, go away.  
**Andáto**, gone.  
**Anéllo**, ring.  
**Animále**, animal.  
**Animalíno**, little creature.  
**Antíco**, old.  
**Ápe**, bee.  
**Appéna**, hardly.
- Appôsta**, on purpose.  
**Ária**, air.  
**Arricchíto**, enriched.  
**Arriváre**, arrive.  
**Arriváto**, having arrived.  
**Ásino**, ass.  
**Assalíre**, attack.  
**Assênzio**, wormwood.  
**Assolúto**, absolute.  
**Áttimo**, flash.  
**Avánti a**, in front of.  
**Avére**, have.  
**Avvedérsi di**, perceive.  
**Azionáccia**, *from Azíone*.  
**Azíone**, action.  
**Bábbo**, father, papa.  
**Badáre**, keep.  
**Bagnáre**, bathe.  
**Bambíno**, child.  
**Bárbaro**, barbarian.  
**Barbóne**, water-spaniel.  
**Baróne**, baron.  
**Bastóne**, stick.  
**Bel**, *see Bèllo*.  
**Bellíssimo**, very beautiful.  
**Bèllo**, beautiful, fine, kind.  
**Ben**, *see Bène*.  
**Bène**, well, nicely, much.  
**Bène**, good (*noun*).  
**Bócca**, mouth.  
**Bôve**, ox.  
**Brávo**, worthy.



- Brilláre**, shine.  
**Brútto**, ugly.  
**Bucáto**, pricked.  
**Bugia**, lie.  
**Búio**, dark.  
**Buòno**, good.  
**Buttáre**, throw. *Buttar giù* = swallow.  
**Cadére**, fall.  
**Calzóni**, trousers.  
**Can**, *see Cáne*.  
**Cáne**, dog.  
**Capáce**, capable.  
**Cápo**, head. *Da cápo, daccápo* = once more.  
**Cappéllo**, hat.  
**Carlomagno**, Charlemagne.  
**Cárne**, flesh.  
**Cása**, house, home.  
**Cascáre**, fall.  
**Cassétta**, drawer.  
**Cassettóne**, bureau.  
**Castéllo**, castle.  
**Cattívo**, bad, naughty.  
**Cêlia**, trick.  
**Cênto**, a hundred.  
**Cercáre**, search.  
**Cêrto**, certain, some.  
**Cespúglio**, bush.  
**Che**, who, which, that.  
**Che**, what. *Che còsa* = what.  
**Che**, that.  
**Che**, than.  
**Chi . . . chi**, one . . . another.  
**Chiamáre**, call.  
**Chícça**, sweetmeat.  
**Ci**, there.  
**Cínque**, five.
- Città**, city.  
**Cittadíno**, citizen.  
**Códa**, tail.  
**Cógli**, col, *etc.* = *con* + *art.*  
**Cògliere**, catch, pick.  
**Cóllo**, neck.  
**Cóme**, as, like, how, when.  
**Cominciáre**, begin.  
**Comméttere**, commit.  
**Compágnò**, companion.  
**Comúne**, town. *Comúni* = commons.  
**Con**, with.  
**Confètti**, candy.  
**Conóscere**, know, find out.  
**Cónte**, count.  
**Continovaménte**, continually.  
**Contínuo**, continual.  
**Cónto**, count.  
**Còrpo**, body.  
**Corrèggersi**, reform.  
**Còsa**, thing. *Còsa pùbblica* = government.  
**Così**, so, thus.  
**Creatúra**, creature.  
**Crédere**, believe.  
**Cúì**, whom, whose.  
**Curiosità**, curiosity.  
**Curíoso**, curious, funny.  
**Da**, by, from, as to. *Dálle parti* = at the sides.  
**Daccápo**, *see Cápo*.  
**Dái, dal, etc.** = *da* + *art.*  
**Dáre**, give, look.  
**De', dégli, déi, del, etc.** = *di* + *art.*  
**Desidêrio**, desire.  
**Détto**, said, told.  
**Dì**, of, than, to, with.

- Dicêrto**, surely.  
**Di diêtro**, from behind.  
**Diêci**, ten.  
**Diêtro**, behind, after. *Di diêtro* = from behind. *Diêtro a* = after.  
**Dintórni**, neighborhood.  
**Dîo**, God.  
**Dîre**, say, speak.  
**Dirîtto**, right.  
**Discórsò**, talk.  
**Disobbediênte**, disobedient.  
**Disperáto**, desperate.  
**Distánza**, distance.  
**Distrúggere**, destroy.  
**Disubbidiente**, disobedient.  
**Ditîno**, from **Dîto**.  
**Dîto**, finger. *Dîto gróssò* = thumb.  
**Diventáre**, become.  
**Dódicì**, twelve.  
**Dolóre**, pain.  
**Dópo**, after.  
**Dóve**, where.  
**Dovére**, ought, must.  
**Dúe**, two.  
**Dúnque**, therefore.  
**Duránte**, during.  
**E**, and.  
**Ècco**, this is.  
**Ed**, and.  
**Enríco**, Henry.  
**Èssa**, it.  
**Èsse**, them.  
**Èssere**, be. *Èssere per* = be about to.  
**Èssi**, them.  
**Èsso**, it.  
**Fállo**, fault.  
**Fanciúлло**, child.  
**Fáre**, make, let.  
**Farfállà**, butterfly.  
**Fasciáre**, bandage.  
**Fêrro**, iron.  
**Figliuólo**, child, son.  
**Figurársi**, imagine.  
**Finchè non**, until.  
**Finêstra**, window.  
**Finíre**, finish.  
**Fíno a**, up to.  
**Fióre**, flower.  
**Floríto**, flowery.  
**Firênze**, Florence.  
**Firmaménto**, firmament.  
**Fôglia**, leaf.  
**Fónte**, fountain.  
**Forestiêro**, foreign.  
**Fra**, between, in, to.  
**Frédido**, cold.  
**Frónte**, forehead.  
**Frútto**, fruit.  
**Fuggíre**, flee.  
**Fuóri**, out.  
**Fúria**, haste.  
**Gámba**, leg.  
**Gámbo**, stem.  
**Gátto**, cat.  
**Genitóri**, parents.  
**Già**, already.  
**Giardíno**, garden.  
**Gíglìo**, lily.  
**Giorgétto**, Georgie.  
**Giórno**, day.  
**Girár**, see **Giráre**.  
**Giráre**, go around.  
**Giráto**, gone around.  
**Gíro**, turn, circuit.  
**Gíro gíro a**, round and round.

- Giù**, down.  
**Giudizio**, judgment, idea.  
**Gli**, the.  
**Gli**, it.  
**Gli**, to him.  
**Glie**, *see Gli, Le*.  
**Glôbo**, globe.  
**Goloso**, glutton, greedy.  
**Governato**, governed.  
**Grande**, big.  
**Grandissimo**, very big.  
**Grido**, shout.  
**Grôso**, big.  
**Guardarsi**, refrain.  
**I**, the.  
**Il**, the.  
**Illuminato**, illumined.  
**Il quâle**, who.  
**Imperatore**, emperor.  
**Impêro**, empire.  
**In**, in.  
**Infatti**, in fact.  
**Infinitamente**, infinitely.  
**Infino**, even.  
**Infocato**, blazing.  
**Ingordigia**, gluttony.  
**Insegnare**, teach.  
**Insetto**, insect.  
**Insieme**, together.  
**Insomma**, in short.  
**Intendimento**, intelligence.  
**Intorno**, around (*adv.*).  
**Intorno a**, around (*prep.*).  
**Invasione**, invasion.  
**Inspirare**, inspire.  
**L'**, *see La, Le, Lo*.  
**La**, the.  
**La**, it, her.  
**Là**, there. *Di là* = there.  
**Lacerare**, tear.  
**Ladra**, thief.  
**Ladro**, robber.  
**Lampo**, flash.  
**Lancetta**, hand.  
**Lasciare**, leave, let, let go.  
**Lasciato**, let.  
**Lavorare**, work.  
**Le**, the.  
**Le**, to her, to it.  
**Le**, them.  
**Leone**, lion.  
**Lêsto**, quick.  
**Levare**, take away. *Levârse* (*with direct object*) = get rid of.  
**Levato**, up.  
**Li**, them.  
**Lì**, there.  
**Lìbero**, free.  
**Lo**, the.  
**Lo**, him, it.  
**Longobardo**, Longobard.  
**Lontano**, distant.  
**Loro**, them, their.  
**Luce**, light.  
**Lucertola**, lizard.  
**Lui**, him, he.  
**Lume**, light.  
**Luminoso**, luminous.  
**Luna**, moon.  
**Ma**, but.  
**Madre**, mother.  
**Maestoso**, majestic.  
**Maestra**, school-mistress.  
**Maestro**, school-master.  
**Maggio**, May.  
**Maggiore**, larger.

- Mái**, ever. *Non mai* = never.  
**Malánno**, harm. *Far malánni*  
 = mischief-making.  
**Maláta**, ill.  
**Maldicênte**, gossip.  
**Mále**, badly, ill.  
**Mále**, wicked.  
**Mámma**, mother, mamma.  
**Mandáre**, send.  
**Mangiáre**, eat.  
**Maniêra**, manner.  
**Máno**, hand.  
**Mattína**, morning.  
**Méno**, less.  
**Ménto**, chin.  
**Méntre**, while.  
**Meraviglióso**, wonderful.  
**Metà**, half.  
**Méttere**, put. *Méttersi* = begin,  
 put on.  
**Mêzzo**, half.  
**Mêzzo**, middle. *In mêzzo a* = in  
 the middle of.  
**Mício**, puss, cat.  
**Milióne**, million.  
**Minacciáre**, threaten.  
**Minóre**, smaller.  
**Minúto**, minute.  
**Mío**, my.  
**Môdo**, way.  
**Molestáre**, annoy.  
**Mólti**, many.  
**Mólto**, much.  
**Môrdere**, bite.  
**Mósca**, fly.  
**Móstra**, face.  
**Múro**, wall.  
**Mutáre**, change.
- Nascósto**, hidden.  
**Náso**, nose.  
**Náto**, born.  
**Ne**, of it, for it.  
**Nè**, nor.  
**Néi**, nel, etc. = in + *art.*  
**Nemméno**, even.  
**Nessúno**, nobody.  
**Niccolíno**, Nicholas, Nick.  
**Nídq**, nest.  
**No**, no. *Di no* = no.  
**Nóbile**, noble.  
**Nobiltà**, nobility.  
**Nóí**, we, us.  
**Nôia**, trouble.  
**Non**, not. *Non . . . che* = only.  
**Nôstro**, our.  
**Nôtte**, night.  
**Nôve**, nine.  
**Núlla**, nothing.  
**Número**, number.  
**O**, or.  
**O**, oh.  
**Ôcchio**, eye.  
**Occhióne**, from **Ôcchio**.  
**Odóre**, odor.  
**Ógni**, every.  
**Ognúno**, everybody.  
**Óltre**, beyond, over.  
**Óra**, now.  
**Óra**, hour.  
**Oramáí**, at last.  
**Orígine**, origin.  
**Ôro**, gold.  
**Orológio**, watch.  
**Ôtto**, eight.  
**Padroncínno**, little master.  
**Palázso**, palace.

|   |  |
|---|--|
| <b>Panière</b> , basket.  | <b>Prêso</b> , near.                               |
| <b>Panierino</b> , <i>from Panière</i> .  | <b>Prêsto</b> , early.                             |
| <b>Pànni</b> , clothes.   | <b>Pretêndere</b> , expect.                        |
| <b>Parécohio</b> , some.  | <b>Prevalére</b> , prevail.                        |
| <b>Parére</b> , seem.   | <b>Prîmo</b> , first.                              |
| <b>Pàrte</b> , part, side. <i>Dàlle pàrti</i> =<br>at the sides. <i>A quèsta pàrte</i> =<br>to this time. | <b>Prónto</b> , quick.                             |
| <b>Participàre</b> , participate.   | <b>Público</b> , public.                           |
| <b>Pàsso</b> , step.  | <b>Punîre</b> , punish.                            |
| <b>Pàtto</b> , condition. <i>A pàtto che</i> =<br>on condition that.                                      | <b>Púnto</b> , point.                              |
| <b>Pel</b> = <b>per il</b> .  | <b>Quadrúpede</b> , quadruped.                     |
| <b>Pensàre</b> , think.   | <b>Qualche</b> , some.                             |
| <b>Per</b> , for, in order to, on account<br>of, through, by.   | <b>Qualchedúno</b> , somebody.                     |
| <b>Perchè</b> , why, because.   | <b>Qualcôsa</b> , anything.                        |
| <b>Pêrdere</b> , lose.  | <b>Qualcúno</b> , somebody.                        |
| <b>Perdonàre</b> , pardon.  | <b>Quàle</b> , <i>see Il quale</i> .               |
| <b>Permesso</b> , permission.   | <b>Quándo</b> , when.                              |
| <b>Però</b> , therefore, however.   | <b>Quánto</b> , as much.                           |
| <b>Pésce</b> , fish.  | <b>Quattórdici</b> , fourteen.                     |
| <b>Pétto</b> , chest.   | <b>Quáttro</b> , four.                             |
| <b>Piánta</b> , plant.  | <b>Que'</b> , <i>quéi</i> , <i>pl. of Quéllo</i> . |
| <b>Picchiàre</b> , strike.  | <b>Quégli</b> , <i>pl. of Quéllo</i> .             |
| <b>Piccíno</b> , tiny, small.   | <b>Quel</b> , <i>see Quéllo</i> .                  |
| <b>Píccolo</b> , little, small.   | <b>Quéllo</b> , that.                              |
| <b>Piêde</b> , foot.  | <b>Quêsto</b> , this.                              |
| <b>Piêno</b> , full.  | <b>Qui</b> , here. <i>Di qui</i> = here.           |
| <b>Pigliàre</b> , take.   | <b>Quíndi</b> , therefore.                         |
| <b>Pínna</b> , fin.   | <b>Raccontàre</b> , relate.                        |
| <b>Più</b> , more, most.  | <b>Raggiúngere</b> , overtake.                     |
| <b>Po'</b> , little.  | <b>Ragióne</b> , reason.                           |
| <b>Pôl</b> , then, too.   | <b>Rasênte</b> , close.                            |
| <b>Portàre</b> , take, bring.   | <b>Recreazióne</b> , recess.                       |
| <b>Potére</b> , can, be able.   | <b>Refezióne</b> , lunch.                          |
| <b>Pôvero</b> , poor.   | <b>Rêggere</b> , stand, endure.                    |
| <b>Prêndere</b> , take.   | <b>Respiràre</b> , breathe.                        |
|   | <b>Réttile</b> , reptile.                          |
|   | <b>Riccárdo</b> , Richard.                         |
|   | <b>Ricominciàre</b> , begin again.                 |
|   | <b>Ricordàrsi</b> , remember.                      |

- Rídere**, laugh.  
**Ríga**, line. *Di prima ríga* = first-class.  
**Ríghettína**, little mark.  
**Rimandáre**, send back.  
**Rimanére**, remain.  
**Rimediáre a**, atone for.  
**Rimproveráre**, reprove.  
**Ripêtere**, repeat.  
**Ripôso**, rest.  
**Rispóndere**, reply.  
**Risputáre**, spit again.  
**Rómpere**, break.  
**Rôsa**, rose.  
**Rotóndo**, round.  
**Rubáre**, steal.  
**Sanguínoso**, bloody.  
**Sapére**, know, hear.  
**Saporáccio**, from **Sapóre**.  
**Sapóre**, taste.  
**Sásso**, stone.  
**Scappáre**, run away.  
**Scêna**, scene.  
**Scéndere**, see **Scéndere**.  
**Scéndere**, descend.  
**Scuôla**, school.  
**Se**, if, whether.  
**Se**, see **Si**.  
**Sè**, itself, himself, herself.  
**Secóndo che**, according as.  
**Segnáto**, marked.  
**Seguíre**, turn out.  
**Sèi**, six.  
**Sêmpre**, always.  
**Senése**, Sienese.  
**Sentíre**, taste, hear.  
**Sénza**, without.  
**Sêrpe**, snake.  
**Servitóre**, servant.  
**Sessánta**, sixty.  
**Sêtte**, seven.  
**Sfacciatággine**, impudence.  
**Si**, himself, herself, itself.  
**Sl**, yes, so.  
**Signóra**, lady.  
**Signóre**, gentleman.  
**Signoría**, rule.  
**Símile**, like.  
**Smisuráto**, boundless.  
**Soáve**, sweet.  
**Solaménte**, only.  
**Sóle**, sun.  
**Sollécito**, early, brisk.  
**Sólo**, alone.  
**Sommáto**, added.  
**Sópra**, on, above. *Di sópra* = up, above.  
**Sorèlla**, sister.  
**Sorellína**, from **Sorèlla**.  
**Sòrte**, lucky.  
**Sospettáre**, suspect.  
**Sospêtto**, suspicion.  
**Sostégno**, support.  
**Sótto**, under. *Di sótto* = down, underneath.  
**Sparíre**, disappear.  
**Spíochio**, slice.  
**Spína**, thorn.  
**Sputáre**, spit.  
**Stánza**, room.  
**Stáre**, stay, stand.  
**Stélla**, star.  
**Stéssso**, himself.  
**Stéssso**, same.  
**Stéssso**, even.  
**Stracciáre**, tear.

- Strétto**, close, tight.  
**Strilláre**, scream.  
**Su**, on, up.  
**Su'**, *sul, etc.* = **su** + *art.*  
**Súbito**, at once.  
**Súo**, its, his, her.  
**Tángo**, so much, so, much.  
**Tángo . . . quáto**, both . . . and.  
**Te**, thee, you.  
**Têmpo**, time.  
**Tenúto**, held.  
**Têrra**, earth, ground, land.  
**Território**, territory.  
**Ti**, thee, you.  
**Tiráre**, throw, draw. *Tirár fuòri*, take out.  
**Tócco**, one o'clock.  
**Tornáre**, return, returning.  
**Tórno tórno a**, round and round.  
**Toscáno**, Tuscan.  
**Tra**, among, to.  
**Tranquillaménte**, tranquilly.  
**Trátto** : *a un trátto* = all at once.  
**Traversáre**, cross.  
**Tre**, three.  
**Trédici**, thirteen.  
**Trónco**, trunk.  
**Trováre**, find.  
**Tu**, thou, you.  
**Túo**, thy, your.  
**Tútto**, all. *Per tútto* = everywhere. *Tútti e due* = both ; *tútti e tre* = all three ; *etc.*  
**Uccellíno**, *from Uccello*.  
**Uccello**, bird.  
**Un**, a, one.
- Úna**, a, one.  
**Úndici**, eleven.  
**Úno**, a, one.  
**Uòvo**, egg.  
**Urláre**, yell.  
**Úscio**, door.  
**Vassóino**, tray.  
**Vedére**, see.  
**Ventiquáttro**, twenty-four.  
**Verità**, truth.  
**Véro**, true.  
**Véscovo**, bishop.  
**Vêspa**, wasp.  
**Vestíre**, dress.  
**Vía**, off, away, so forth. *Sometimes used instead of a verb of motion.*  
**Viággio**, way, journey.  
**Vicíno**, near.  
**Viôla**, violet.  
**Viôttola**, path.  
**Víso**, face.  
**Víspo**, lively.  
**Viziáccio**, *from Vizio*.  
**Vízio**, vice.  
**Vóce**, voice.  
**Vôglia**, desire.  
**Volére**, wish.  
**Volontariaménte**, voluntarily.  
**Vôlta**, time.  
**Voltár**, *see Voltáre*.  
**Voltáre**, turn.  
**Zámpa**, paw, foot.  
**Zampína**, little paw.  
**Zanzára**, mosquito.  
**Zimbêllo**, laughing-stock.

# ENGLISH-ITALIAN VOCABULARY.

---

**A**, un, úno, úna.  
**Africa**, África.  
**After**, dópo.  
**Ago**, fa.  
**Aim**, miráre.  
**Air**, ária.  
**All**, tútto.  
**Alone**, sólo.  
**Although**, sebbêne.  
**Always**, sêmpre.  
**Amaze**, meravigliáre.  
**America**, Amériica.  
**An**, *see* **A**.  
**Ancient**, antíco.  
**And**, e.  
**Another**, un áltro.  
**April**, apríle, *m.*  
**Around**, intórno.  
**As**, cóme.  
**As . . . as**, quánto, tánto . . . cóme.  
**Asia**, Ásia.  
**At**, a.  
**Attach**, attaccáre.  
**August**, agósto.  
**Be**, èssere, *irreg.* (**53**, *a*).  
**Beam**, tráve, *m. or f.*  
**Beast**, béstia.  
**Beautiful**, bello.  
**Because**, perchè.  
**Begin**, cominciáre.  
**Believe**, crédere.  
**Big**, gróssso.

**Bird**, uccéllo.  
**Black**, néro.  
**Blood**, sángue, *m.*  
**Boil**, bollíre.  
**Born**, náto. *Pl.* : náti, *m.* ; náte, *f.*  
**Boy**, ragázzo.  
**Branch**, rámo.  
**Bread**, páne, *m.*  
**Brother**, fratéllo, *m.*  
**Bubble**, vescichétta.  
**But**, ma.  
**By**, da. *By chance* = per caso.  
**Call**, chiamáre.  
**Capital**, capitále, *f.*  
**Car**, vagóne, *m.*  
**Care**, cúra.  
**Carriage**, carrôzza.  
**Carry**, portáre.  
**Case**, caso.  
**Ceiling**, pálco.  
**Chance**, caso. *By chance* = per caso.  
**Charged**, cárico.  
**Charity**, carità, *f.*  
**Charles**, Cárlo.  
**Choose**, scégliere, *irreg.*  
**Christopher**, Cristôforo.  
**Circle**, tóndo.  
**City**, città, *f.*  
**Cloud**, núvola.  
**Club**, bastóne, *m.*  
**Coat**, ábito.



- Collect**, raccôgliere, *irreg.*  
**Columbus**, Colômbô.  
**Come back**, tornâre.  
**Companion**, compâgno.  
**Confined**, tenúto.  
**Construct**, costruîre, *irreg.*  
**Continue**, seguitâre.  
**Contrary**, contrârio.  
**Cool**, raffreddârsi.  
**Corner**, cânto.  
**Country**, paése, *m.*  
**Cover**, coprîre, *irreg.*  
**Creature**, animâle, *m.*  
**Crumb**, briciola.  
**Crush**, schiacciâre.  
**Dark**, búio.  
**Day**, giòrno.  
**December**, dicêmbre, *m.*  
**Dense**, dênsô.  
**Department**, dipartiménto.  
**Discover**, scoprîre, *irreg.*  
**Distance**, distânza.  
**Divide**, dividere, *irreg.*  
**Do**, fâre, *irreg.*  
**Dominion**, domínio.  
**Door**, úscio.  
**Down**, giù.  
**Dream**, sognâre.  
**Drop**, gócciola. *Drop by drop* =  
a gócciola a gócciola.  
**Duke**, dúca, *m.*  
**Dungeon**, cárcere, *f.*  
**Dust**, pólvore, *f.*  
**Earn**, guadagnâre.  
**Earth**, têrra.  
**Eight hundred**, ottocênto.  
**Eighty**, ottánta.  
**Either . . . or**, o . . . o.  
**Emmanuel**, Emmanuêle.  
**Emperor**, imperatóre, *m.*  
**Empty**, vuôto.  
**End**, terminâre.  
**Enemy**, nemíco.  
**Escape**, scappâre.  
**Europe**, Eurôpa.  
**Even**, ánche.  
**Ever**, mái.  
**Every**, ógni.  
**Everything**, tútto.  
**Everywhere**, per tútto.  
**Eye**, *noun*, ôcchio.  
**Eye**, *vb.*, occhiâre.  
**Fall**, cadúta.  
**Family**, famíglia, *f.*  
**Far**, lontâno.  
**Father**, pádre, *m.*, bábbô.  
**February**, febbráio.  
**Fief**, fêudo.  
**Fifth**, quínto.  
**Find**, trovâre.  
**Finger**, díto. *Pl. díta, f.*  
**Fire**, fuôco.  
**First**, prímo. *Adv.*, *príma.*  
**Five**, cínque.  
**Flat**, piátto.  
**Flee**, fuggîre.  
**Flower**, fióre, *m.*  
**Fly**, volâre.  
**Food**, mangiâre, *m.*  
**For**, per. *For yourself (conjunctive)* = vi, si.  
**Form**, formâre.  
**Fort**, fortézza.  
**Forth**, fuôri.  
**Forty**, quaránta.  
**Four**, quáttro.

**Four hundred**, quattrocênto.  
**France**, Frância, *f*.  
**Friday**, venerdì, *m*.  
**Friend**, amîco, *m*.  
**From**, da.  
**Fruit**, frûtto.  
**Furniture**, mobilia.  
**Genoa**, Gênova.  
**Give**, dâre, *irreg.*  
**Go**, andâre, *irreg.*  
**Good**, buôno.  
**Grain**, grâno.  
**Great**, grânde.  
**Ground**, têrra.  
**Grove**, boschétto.  
**Grow up**, venîr su, *irreg.*  
**Gun**, schiôppo, fucile, *m*.  
**Hand**, mâno, *f*.  
**Happen**, accadêre, *irreg.*  
**Hardly**, appêna.  
**Hasten**, affrettârsi.  
**Hate**, odiâre.  
**Have**, avêre, *irreg.* (53, b).  
**He**, êgli, lûi.  
**Heat**, câldo.  
**Her**, la, le, lêi.  
**Herb**, êrba.  
**Here**, qua.  
**High**, âlto.  
**Him**, lo, gli, lûi. *To him* = gli, a lûi.  
**Himself**, si.  
**His**, sùo.  
**History**, stôria.  
**Holiday**, fêsta.  
**Honest**, onêsto.  
**However**, tuttavîa.  
**Hunter**, cacciâtore, *m*.

**I**, io.  
**If**, se.  
**Imagine**, immagináre.  
**In**, in.  
**Indeed**, davvéro.  
**Inhabit**, abitâre.  
**Inside**, didêntro.  
**Instance**, esêmpio.  
**Intense**, vívo.  
**Intention**, intenziône, *f*.  
**Into**, in.  
**It**, lo, la, êgli, gli.  
**Italian**, italiâno.  
**Italy**, Itâlia, *f*.  
**Its**, sùo, súa.  
**Itself**, si.  
**Jailer**, carceriêre, *m*.  
**January**, gennâio.  
**July**, lûglio.  
**June**, giúgno.  
**King**, re, *m*.  
**Know**, sapêre, *irreg.*, conôscere  
 (= *be acquainted with*), *irreg.*  
**Land**, paêse, *m.*, têrra.  
**Large**, grânde.  
**Last**, último (*precedes noun*).  
*Last year* = l'ânno scórso.  
**Latter**, quêsto. *The latter* = quêsti, *m. sing.*  
**Leaf**, fôglia.  
**Leap-year**, bisestîle, *m*.  
**Learn**, imparâre.  
**Left**, sinístra.  
**Lid**, têsto.  
**Lift**, sollevâre.  
**Light**, lúce, *f*.  
**Like**, cóme.  
**Little** (= *small*), píccolo, píccíno.

**Little** (= *a small quantity*), pôco.

*Little by little* = a pôco a pôco.

**Live**, vivere, *irreg.*

**Loaded**, carico.

**Lorraine**: *of Lorraine* = lorenése.

**Loud**, fôrte.

**Low**, báссо.

**Lower**, abbassáre.

**Man**, uômo, *pl.* uômini.

**Many**, mólti, *m.*, mólte, *f.*

**March**, mârzo.

**Mask**, máschera.

**May**, mággio.

**Me**, mi, me.

**Melon**, cocómero.

**Merchant**, mercánte, *m.*

**Middle**, mézzo.

**Mignonette**, amoríno.

**Mine**, mío.

**Moisture**, umidità, *f.*

**Monday**, lunedì, *m.*

**Month**, mése, *m.*

**Moon**, lúna.

**More**, più.

**Mortify**, mortificáre.

**Most**, il più.

**Mr.**, signór.

**My**, mío.

**Name**, nóme, *m.*

**Napoleon**, Napoleóne.

**Near**, vicíno a.

**Need**, bisógno.

**Never**, non . . . mái.

**Nice**, gentíle.

**Ninety**, nováнта.

**No**, no.

**Nobody**, nessúno.

**Nor**, nè.

**Not**, non.

**November**, novêmbre.

**Now**, óra.

**Object**, oggétto.

**Observe**, osserváre.

**Oceanica**, Oceánia.

**October**, ottóbre.

**Of**, di. *Of them* = ne.

**On**, sópra, su (*before vow.*, sur).

**One**, úno.

**One's self**, si.

**Only**, sólo (*adj.*), non . . . che (*adv.*).

**Opposite**, oppósto.

**Or**, o.

**Other**, áltro.

**Ought**, dovére, *irreg.*

**Out**, fuôri.

**Outside**, difuôri, *m.*

**Over there**, laggiù.

**Face**, páссо.

**Parents**, genitóri, *m. pl.*

**Paris**, Parígi.

**Parrot**, pappagállo.

**Part**, pártte, *f.*

**Peasant**, contadíno.

**Perfectly**, próprio.

**Perhaps**, fórse.

**Persuade**, persuadére, *irreg.*

**Philip**, Filíppo.

**Place**, luógo.

**Placed**, pósto.

**Plainly**, schiettaménte.

**Plant**, piánta.

**Point**, púnto.

**Poor**, pôvero.

**Pot**, péntola.

**Present**, presentáre.

- Prevent**, impedíre.  
**Principle**, principio.  
**Prison**, prigióne, *f*.  
**Prisoner**, prigioniero.  
**Profession**, professione, *f*.  
**Purpose**, úso.  
**Quantity**, quantità, *f*.  
**Question**, domanda.  
**Rain**, pioggia.  
**Raise**, leváre.  
**Rare**, raro.  
**Recognized**, conosciuto.  
**Relate**, raccontáre.  
**Remain**, rimanére, *irreg.*, restáre.  
**Repeat**, ripétere.  
**Reply**, rispóndere, *irreg.*  
**Resolve**, risciógliere, *irreg.*  
**Rest**, posáre.  
**Right**, destra.  
**Rise**, salíre, *irreg.*  
**Room**, stánza.  
**Root**, radíce, *f*.  
**Round**, rotóndo.  
**Rule**, signoría.  
**Sacrifice**, sacrificio.  
**Sail**, navigáre.  
**Sailor**, marináro.  
**Same**, stésso (*precedes noun*).  
**Satisfy**, contentáre.  
**Saturday**, sábito.  
**Say**, díre, *irreg.*  
**Sea**, máre, *m*.  
**Second**, secóndo.  
**See**, vedére, *irreg.*  
**Seed**, séme, *m*.  
**Sent**, mandáto.  
**September**, settémbre, *m*.  
**Service**, servizio.  
**Seven**, sette.  
**Shake**, scuótere, *irreg.*  
**Ship**, náve, *f*.  
**Shoot**, bársa.  
**Short**, córto.  
**Show off**, far vedére, *irreg.*  
**Side**, párté, *f*.  
**Silence**, silénzio.  
**Sinister**, sinistro.  
**Sir**, signóre, *m*.  
**Sixty**, sessánta.  
**Sky**, ciélo.  
**Small**, piccòlo, piccino.  
**Smoke**, fúmo.  
**So**, cosí.  
**So as to**, per.  
**Some**, quálche.  
**Somebody else**, qualchedun' ál-  
tro.  
**Sometimes**, qualchevólta.  
**So much**, tánto.  
**Son**, figlio.  
**Sort**, sôrta.  
**Spaniard**, spagnuôlo.  
**Speak**, parláre.  
**Spider**, rágno, rágnolo.  
**Sprouted**, germogliáto.  
**Stalk**, fústo.  
**Star**, stélla.  
**Steam**, vapóre, *m*.  
**Straight**, dirítto.  
**Study**, *noun*, stúdio.  
**Study**, *vb.*, studiáre.  
**Sun**, sóle, *m*.  
**Sunday**, doménica.  
**Support**, mantenére, *irreg.*  
**Surprised**, sorprésó.  
**Surround**, circondáre.

|   |  |
|---|--|
| <b>Table</b> , távola.  | <b>Tuscan</b> , toscáno.                             |
| <b>Take</b> , prèndere, <i>irreg.</i>   | <b>Twelve</b> , dódici.                              |
| <b>Tear</b> , raschiàre.  | <b>Twenty-eight</b> , ventòtto.                      |
| <b>Than</b> , che, di.  | <b>Twenty-nine</b> , ventinòve.                      |
| <b>Thanks</b> , grázie, <i>f. pl.</i>   | <b>Twig</b> , ramoscèllo.                            |
| <b>That</b> , <i>conj.</i> , che.   | <b>Two</b> , dúe.                                    |
| <b>That</b> , <i>rel. pron.</i> , che.  | <b>Under</b> , sótto.                                |
| <b>That</b> , <i>demons. pron.</i> , quéllo.                                    | <b>Unfortunate</b> , infelíce.                       |
| <b>The</b> , il, lo, la, i, gli, le.  | <b>Unhappy</b> , sventuráto.                         |
| <b>Them</b> , li, le, lóro. <i>Of them</i> = ne.                                | <b>Union</b> , unióne, <i>f.</i>                     |
| <b>Then</b> , pòi.  | <b>Unite</b> , raccògliere, <i>irreg.</i>            |
| <b>There</b> , là, lì.  | <b>Until</b> , <i>prep.</i> , fíno a.                |
| <b>Therefore</b> , però.  | <b>Until</b> , <i>conj.</i> , finchè . . . non.      |
| <b>They</b> , éssi, ésse, lóro.   | <b>Us</b> , nói, ci ( <i>conjunctive</i> ).          |
| <b>Thick</b> , gròsso.  | <b>Usual</b> , usáto.                                |
| <b>Thing</b> , còsa.  | <b>Vapor</b> , vapóre, <i>m.</i>                     |
| <b>Think</b> , pensáre.   | <b>Vegetable</b> , vegetábile, <i>m.</i>             |
| <b>Third</b> , tézzo.   | <b>Very</b> , mólto, tánto.                          |
| <b>Thirtieth</b> , trentésimo.  | <b>Victor</b> , Vittório.                            |
| <b>Thirty</b> , trénta.   | <b>Villa</b> , vílla.                                |
| <b>Thirty-first</b> , trentésimo prímó.   | <b>Village</b> , villággio.                          |
| <b>Thirty-one</b> , trentúnó, trentún.  | <b>Water</b> , ácqua.                                |
| <b>This</b> , quésto.   | <b>Way</b> (= <i>manner</i> ), maniéra.              |
| <b>Thousand</b> , mílle.  | <b>We</b> , nói.                                     |
| <b>Three</b> , tre.   | <b>Web</b> , téla.                                   |
| <b>Three hundred</b> , trecênto.  | <b>Wednesday</b> , mercoledì, <i>m.</i>              |
| <b>Thursday</b> , giovedì, <i>m.</i>  | <b>Week</b> , settimána.                             |
| <b>Thus</b> , cosí.   | <b>What</b> , <i>interrog. and exclam.</i> ,<br>che. |
| <b>Time</b> , ( <i>Ex. 2</i> ) vòlta; ( <i>Ex. 18 and</i><br><i>20</i> ) têmpo. | <b>What</b> , <i>rel.</i> , quéllo che.              |
| <b>To</b> , a. <i>To him</i> = gli.   | <b>When</b> , quándo.                                |
| <b>Together</b> , insiême.  | <b>Where</b> , dóve.                                 |
| <b>Too</b> (= <i>also</i> ), ánche.   | <b>Which</b> , che.                                  |
| <b>Too</b> (= <i>excessively</i> ), trôppo.                                     | <b>While</b> , méntre.                               |
| <b>Tree</b> , álbero.   | <b>Who</b> , <i>rel.</i> , che.                      |
| <b>Trunk</b> , trónco.  | <b>Whom</b> , <i>rel.</i> , cúí.                     |
| <b>Tuesday</b> , martedì, <i>m.</i>   | <b>Willingly</b> , volentiêri.                       |
| <b>Turn</b> , giráre.   | <b>Wind</b> , vènto.                                 |

**Window**, finêstra.

**With**, con.

**Without**, sênza.

**Wood**, bôsko.

**Word**, parôla.

**Working-day**, giòrno di lavôro.

**World**, móndo.

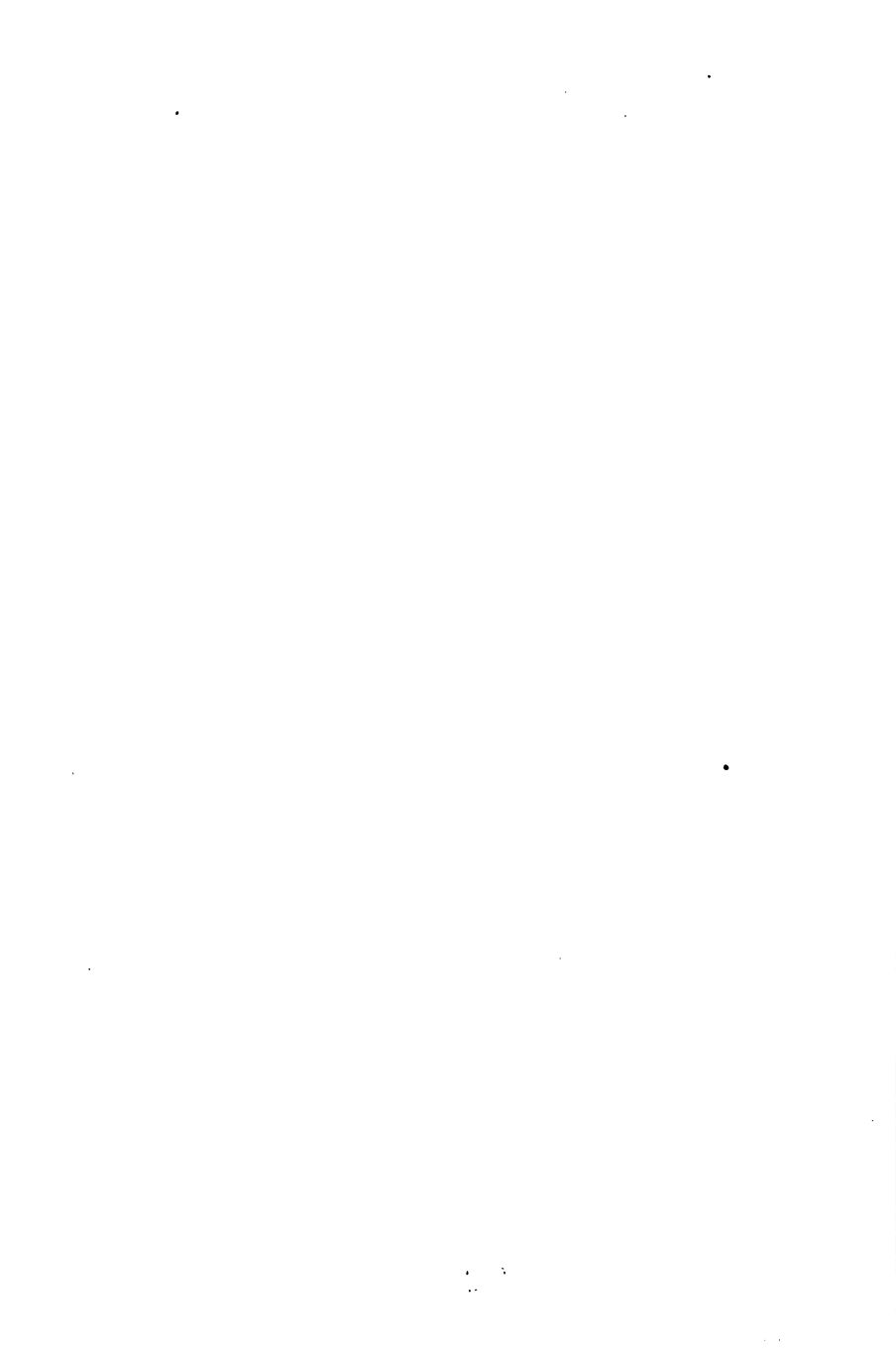
**Year**, áнно.

**Yes**, già.

**You**, vói, vi, Lái, la, le. *To you*  
= vi, le.

**Your**, vôstro, Súo.

**Yourself**, vi, si. *For yourself*  
vi, si.



## APPENDIX.

---

### ADDITIONAL NOTES ON PRONUNCIATION.

[The numbers prefixed to the following notes refer to the paragraphs of the first chapter in this book.]

1. The Tuscan names of the letters are : *a, bi, ci, di, é, êffe, gi, ácca, i, jé* or *i lúngo, êlle, êmme, ênne, ð, pi, cu, érre, ésse, ti, u, vu* or *vi, zêta* (with *z* pronounced *dz*). They do not change in the plural. Their gender is not fixed ; in general those ending in *a* or *e* are considered as feminine, the others as masculine. *K, x, y* are *cáppa, iccase, îpsilon*, all masculine.

2. *a.* The sounds *á, ê, ð*, followed by a single consonant, are somewhat longer than the other vowels : for instance, in *dáto, fêro, ðvo* the accented *a, e, o* are longer than in *dáttero, véro, ðve*. Final accented vowels sound particularly short : as in *amò, beltà, caffè*.

*ß.* In forming *i* the mouth should be made as broad as possible from side to side. For *u* and *ó* the lips should be puckered. For *a* and *ê* the mouth should be opened very wide.

3. *a.* If an adverb in *-mênte* is formed from an adjective containing *ê* or *ð*, this vowel has, in the adverb, a secondary accent, and retains its open sound : as (*brève*) *brèvemênte*, "briefly" ; (*nobile*) *nòbilmênte*, "nobly." Furthermore, *ê* and *ð* retain their quality in seeming compounds that consist, in reality, of two or more separate words : as *tostochè* = *tòstoché* = *tòsto che*, "as soon as."

*ß.* Preterites and past participles in *-esi, -eso, -osi, -oso* have a close *e* or *o* ; except *chièsi* (also *chiési*), *esplòsi, esplòso, lèsi* (not used), *lèso*.



γ. In the suffixes *-eccio* (-a), *-esco* (-a), *-ese*, *-essa*, *-etto* (-a), *-ezzo* (-a), *-mente*, and *-mento* the *e* is always close; while in the diminutive suffix *-ello* (-a), and in the endings *-ente*, *-enza*, *-erio* (or *-ero*), and *-esimo* (-a) it is open: as *inglese*, "English"; *probabilmente*, "probably"; *prudente*, "prudent"; *ventésimo*, "twentyeth."

δ. In the endings *-oio*, *-one*, *-ore*, and in the suffix *-oso* (-a) the *o* is close; while in the ending *-orio*, and in *-occio* (-a), *-otto* (-a), and *-ozzo* (-a), used as suffixes to nouns or adjectives, it is open: as *vassóio*, "tray"; *amóre*, "love"; *romitório*, "hermitage"; *casótta*, "good-sized house."

ε. In the following cases accented *e* or *o* may have either the close or the open sound: in *Giorgio*, *maestra*, *maestro*, *nego* (from *negáre*), *neve*, *organo*, *scendere*, *senza*, *siete* and *sono* (from *èssere*), *spegnere*, *Stefano*, *vendere*; and in the conditional endings *-esti*, *-emmo*, *-este*. The present subjunctive forms *dieno*, *sieno*, *stieno* are pronounced also *dièno*, *sièno*, *stièno*.

ζ. In poetry we often find *è* for *iè*, *ò* for *uò*: as *ven* = *viène*, "he comes"; *cor* = *cudre*, "heart."

4. C. α. Between two vowels, of which the second is *e* or *i*, single *c* and single *g* are, in ordinary Tuscan speech, pronounced respectively like *sh* in "ship" and *si* in "vision": as *páce*, "peace"; *stagíone*, "season."

β. Between two vowels, of which the second is *a*, *o*, or *u*, a single *c* is, in popular Tuscan speech, sounded nearly like English *h*: as *poco* (*pòho*), "little"; *di questa cosa* (*di hwèsta hòsa*), "of this thing." This pronunciation is regarded as vulgar.

J. Some writers use *j*, except after a consonant, for the *i* that is pronounced *y*: as *jeri* for *ièri*, "yesterday"; *pajo* for *páio*, "pair." It is sometimes used also for final *i* in the plural of words in unaccented *-io*: as *specchj* (also *speccht* and occasionally *specchiü*) for *spécchi*, "mirrors," plural of *spécchio*.

Z. Aside from verbs in *-izzare*, *z* and *zz* have the value *dz* in the following words and their derivatives: —

|            |            |           |          |         |
|------------|------------|-----------|----------|---------|
| arzillo    | frizzo     | magazzino | romanzo  | zêlo    |
| azzurro    | garzone    | manzo     | ronzio   | zenit   |
| barzellèta | gazzella   | mêzzo     | rôzzo    | zêro    |
| bizza      | gazzetta   | orizzonte | zaffiro  | zêta    |
| brèzza     | gônzo      | ôrzo      | zaffrone | zinco   |
| brônzo     | Lázaro     | pênzolo   | zanzára  | zodiaco |
| donzella   | lazzaretto | prânzo    | zêbra    | zôlla   |
| dozzina    | lázzo      | ribrezzo  | zêffiro  | zôna    |

also in all derivatives of the Greek *zoos*, and in many uncommon words.

5. In pronouncing *gli* and *gn* the point of the tongue should remain behind the lower teeth: as *figlio*, "son"; *ogni*, "every."

6. If one of the words mentioned below, or any oxytone ending in a vowel, is closely followed by a word beginning with a consonant, this consonant is, in Tuscany, generally pronounced double. The words are: \*—

|                  |                  |            |               |              |
|------------------|------------------|------------|---------------|--------------|
| a                | dì, <i>day</i>   | giù        | o §           | sópra        |
| che              | dì', <i>say</i>  | ha         | più           | sta †        |
| chi              | e                | ho         | qua           | sto          |
| ciò              | è                | infra      | qualche       | su           |
| cóme             | fa †             | intra      | qui           | te †         |
| cóntra           | fè, <i>faith</i> | là         | re            | tra          |
| da               | fe' = fêce       | lì         | sa            | tre          |
| dà, <i>gives</i> | fo               | ma         | se, <i>if</i> | tu           |
| da', <i>give</i> | fra              | me †       | sè            | va †         |
| do               | fu               | mo' = môdo | sì            | vo = vádo    |
| dóve             | già              | nè         | so            | vo' = vòglio |

Ex.: *verrà da me domani* (*verràddammèddomàni*), "he will come to my house to-morrow." In such cases *c* is, of course, never pronounced like *h* (see 4, C, β).

\* The materials for this list were taken from D' Ovidio's article in Gröber's *Grundriss der romanischen Philologie*, p. 496.

† Both the imperative sing. and the pres. ind. third sing.

‡ The disjunctive form.

§ Both the conjunction "or" and the interrogative particle.

## INFLECTIONS OF THE VOICE.

1. Italian speech is at once smoother and less monotonous than American: it is less interrupted by breathings, and it has far greater variations of pitch. In order to speak or read Italian well, an American must learn to breathe in speaking as he does in singing; he must inhale deeply at the beginning of the clause, and not stop again until he reaches the end of it. The following directions may be of use; they are based on the Tuscan pronunciation, and particularly on that of Siena.

2. *a.* The simplest inflection in a declarative sentence is as follows: at the beginning the voice is pitched low; it rises in the middle (in earnest conversation often to a falsetto), and falls again at the end. The most emphatic word generally receives the highest tone; if there are no words after it to complete the cadence, the first words of the phrase are often repeated at the end: as *me lo dicono tutti me lo dicono* ("they all tell me so"), where the *u* of *tutti* is an octave higher than the beginning and the close of the sentence.

*β.* When there is a pause on some not particularly emphatic word before the main verb, that word has a slight circumflex accent, the voice rising about one semitone and falling about three: as *fuori di città ^ c'è una bellissima villa \* ("outside the city there's a beautiful villa"), where *bellissima* has the high pitch, and the *a* of *città* has the circumflex. This accent is generally heard whenever modifying clauses or phrases precede the main clause.

*γ.* Almost all declarative sentences are made up chiefly of these two inflections, the long rise and fall and the short circumflex. Americans must avoid breaking up their sentences by meaningless falling tones. The fall occurs in Italian, as in English, on a very emphatic word, and at the end of a sentence. It is used, also, with a verb of saying or thinking, followed by a direct quotation;

and with any word or phrase used as a vocative, except in loud calling (see 4,  $\beta$ ): as *allóra chiàma Alfrédo e gli dice* \ : *Bambino* \ , *dìmmi la verità* \ (*Grammar*, Exercise 17), where the syllables *fre*, *bam*, and *dim* have the highest pitch.

3. a. Questions to which the answer may be "yes" or "no" have either one of two circumflex accents: in the first the voice rises about five semitones and falls one; in the second, which is sometimes used in reading and in polite phrases, the voice rises and falls about an octave. Ex.: *l' hai visto* ("have you seen him?"), where the pitches of *l' hai*, *vi*, and *sto* may be represented by the notes *do*, *fa*, *mi*; *ha ben dormito* ("did you sleep well?"), where *mi* is an octave higher than *do* and *to*. The former accent may be heard in the Irish pronunciation of English.

$\beta$ . These inflections are nearly always confined to the last few syllables of the sentence. In some questions, however, they appear twice, generally occurring first on the verb; and occasionally the circumflex on the verb is the only one.

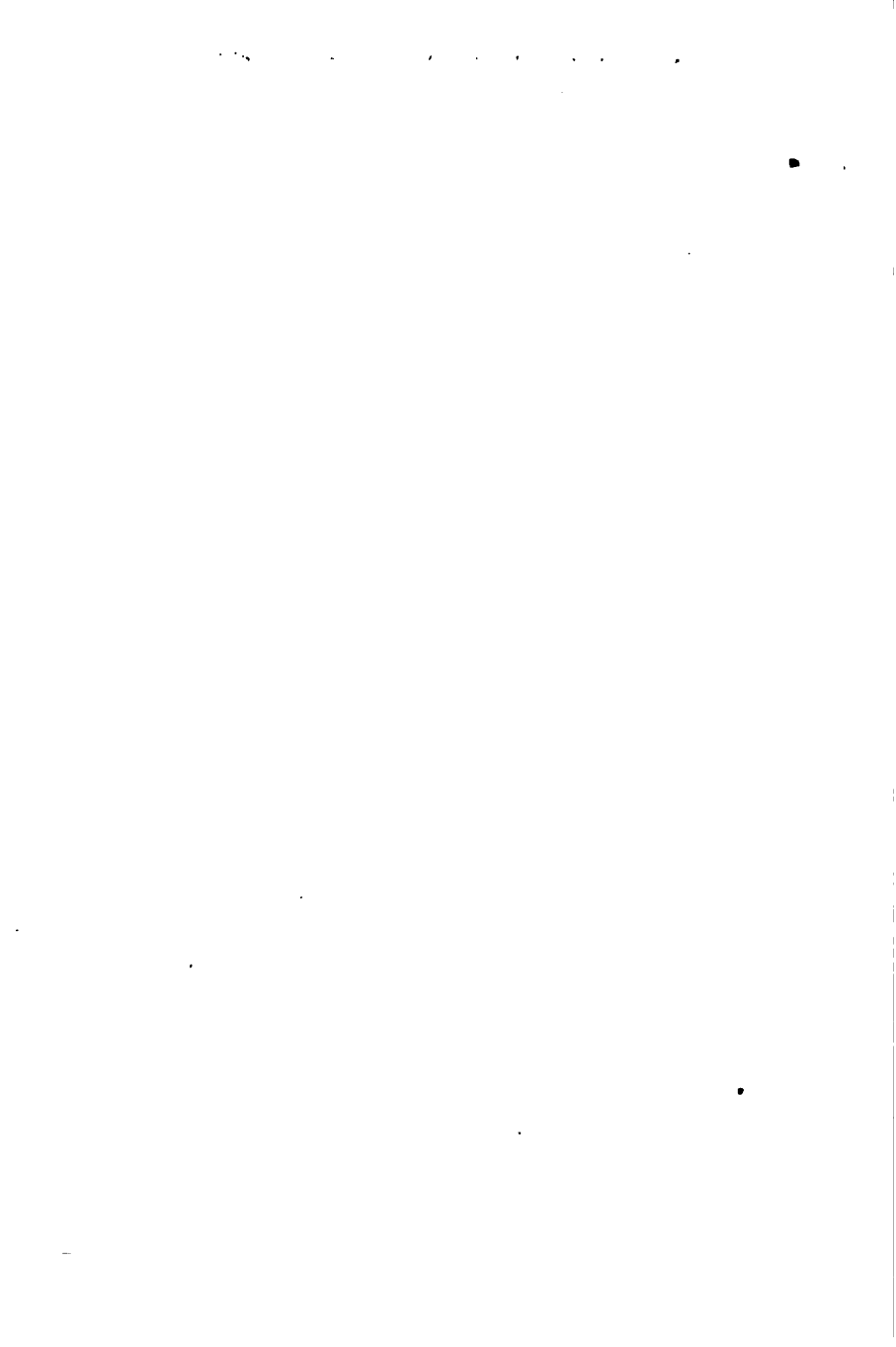
$\gamma$ . Questions that cannot be answered by "yes" or "no" usually begin high, the pitch depending on the emphasis. The voice then falls, but generally rises again at the last syllable, going up about three semitones: as *o come* \ *hai fatto* / ("how did you do it?"). This accent is common among the Irish, and may be heard in England. The final rise is, however, often omitted, especially in very short sentences and in polite phrases: as *come sta* \ ("how do you do?").

4. a. Exclamations of surprise begin very high, and sink rapidly: as *senti* \ ("no!"\*) ; *un affàr di niènte* \ ("you don't say so!"\*), where *un* has the main stress; *per mio bacco* ("I want to know!"\*), with the accent on *per*.

$\beta$ . In calling to persons at a distance, the Tuscans sing rather than speak; the usual tune is *do, la, sol*, the accented syllable being highest: as *Agostina* ("Augustine!"); *partènza* ("all aboard!").

---

\* Popular New England equivalents.



# INDEX.

[The numbers refer to paragraphs. *Ap. N.* means "Appendix, Additional Notes on Pronunciation"; *Ap. V.* stands for "Appendix, Inflections of the Voice."]

**A** (letter): 2; *Ap. N.*, 2.

**À** (preposition): 79; 79, *b*, *h*.

**Accent**: 7; 47; 48; 84; 92, *e*;  
*Ap. V.*

**Accents**: 3; 7.

**Address** (Forms of): 52.

**Adjectives**: 26-34.

Comparison: 31-34.

Gender: 26; 28.

Number: 26; 29.

Position: 27.

Used as nouns: 20; 30.

**Adverbs**: 80-85.

*Ci, vi*: 47, *a*; 84.

Comparison: 80, 2.

Manner: 85.

*Ne*: 47, *a*; 56, *b*.

*Never*: 83.

*Not, non*: 80, 1; 81; 91, *a*.

*Only*: 82.

Position: 80, 1.

*So*: 85, *a*.

**All**: 87.

**Alphabet**: 1; *Ap. N.*, 1.

**Altrui**: 91, *d*.

**Any**: 88.

**Articles**: 9-16.

Definite: see **Definite**.

Indefinite: see **Indefinite**.

**Augmentatives**: 35-37.

**Auxiliary Verbs**: 53-57.

*Avere*: 53, *b*; 54, 3.

*Essere*: 53, *a*; 54, 1, 3.

Compound tenses: 54; 56.

Modal auxiliaries: 57.

**Avere**: 53, *b*; 54, 3; 54, *b*; 92, 5.

**Be**: 53, *a*; 54, 1, 3; 54, *a*, *c*, *d*, *f*;  
92, 126.

**Bello**: 29, *c*.

**Both**: 38, 4; 91.

**Buono**: 29, *c*.

**Can**: see **Modal Auxiliaries**.

**Ci** (adv.): 47, *a*; 84.

**Ci** (pron.): 47-50.

**Close Vowels**: 3; *Ap. N.*, 3.

**Comparison**: 31-34; 80, 2.

Adjectives: 31-34.

Adverbs: 80, 2.

Irregular: 31, *a*; 80, 2.

**Compound Tenses**: 54; 56; 73;  
75.

**Conditional**: 54, 2; 68, *b*; 76; 77;  
92, *c*.

Contracted: 65; 66, 1; 92, *c*.

**Conjugation**: 53-68; 92.

First: 59.

Second: 60.

Third: 60.

- Fourth:** 61.  
**Variations:** 63; 66, *a*; 68.  
**Irregular verbs:** 64-68; 92.  
**Auxiliary verbs:** 53-57.  
**Compound tenses:** 54; 56.  
**Compound verbs:** 67, *a*; 93, *a*.  
**Conjunctions:** 78.  
     With subjunctive: 77, *d*; 78, *a, b*.  
**Consonants:** 4-6; Ap. N., 4-6.  
**Contraction:** 12; 23 (†); 50 (\*);  
     63, *d*; 65; 66, *i*; 68, *a*.  
**Da:** 79, *c, f, g*.  
**Dates:** 38, *b*; 39, *b*.  
**Definite Article:** 10-13.  
     Form: 10-12.  
     Use: 12, *a*; 13; 38, *b*; 39, *a*;  
     45; 69; 70.  
**Di:** 12; 17; 79, *b, 3, f, h, j*.  
**Diminutives:** 35-37.  
**Do:** 54, *g*.  
**Double Letters:** 6.  
**Doubling:** 48, *d*; 93, *a*; Ap. N., 6.  
**E** (letter): 3; 68, *i, j*; Ap. N., 3.  
**E** (conjunction): 78; 78, *c*.  
**Ecco:** 48, *c*; 84, *a*.  
**Essere:** 53, *a*; 54, *i, 3*; 54, *a, c, d*;  
     92, 126.  
**Exclamations:** 43, *b*; 79, *b*; Ap.  
     V., 4.  
**For:** 79, *c*.  
**Fractions:** 39, *c*.  
**Future:** 54, 2; 68, *c*; 74; 77.  
     Contracted: 65; 66, *i*.  
**Gender:** 9-11; 14-15; 18-21; 26;  
     28.  
**Grande:** 29, *c*.  
**H:** 4; 22, *a*; 23, *a, c*; 59, *a*.  
**Have:** 53, *b*; 54, 3; 54, *b, h*; 57, *a*;  
     92, 5.  
**Here:** 84.  
**I** (letter): 2; 22, *b*; 23, *b*; 59, *a*;  
     60; 92, *f*; Ap. N., 2.  
**I** (euphonic): 79; 81.  
**Imperative:** 66, *b*; 72; 77, *a*.  
**Imperfect:**  
     Form: 63; 63, *c*; 65; 68, *a, h*.  
     Use: 54, *d, e*; 73; 75. [77, *c*.  
**Impersonal Verbs:** 51; 51, *h*;  
**Indefinite Article:** 14-16.  
     Form: 14-15.  
     Use: 16; 38, *i*; 43, *b*.  
**Infinitive:** 48, *b*; 58; 69-72.  
     Contracted: 65.  
**Inflections of the voice:** Ap. V.  
**Interrogation:** see **Questions**.  
**Issimo** (suffix): 35, *a*.  
**It:** 47; 51; 51, *h*.  
**Letters:** *i*; Ap. N., *i*.  
**May:** see **Modal Auxiliaries**.  
**Modal Auxiliaries:** 57.  
**Moods:** 57; 69-77; 78, *a*.  
     Conditional: 54, 2; 65; 66, *i*;  
     68, *b*; 76; 77.  
     Imperative: 66, *b*; 72; 77, *a*.  
     Infinitive: 48, *b*; 58; 65; 69-72.  
     Participle: 54, *a, b*; 62; 63, *d*;  
     69-71.  
     Subjunctive: 44, *c*; 77; 78, *a*.  
**Must:** see **Modal Auxiliaries**.  
**Myself, thyself, etc.:** 47, 2; 51, *c*.  
**Ne** (adv.): 47, *a*; 56, *b*; 84.  
**Ne** (pron.): 47, 3; 48; 49; 88; 89.

**Neuter Verbs:** 54, 3; 56, *a*.

**Never:** 83.

**Non:** 80, 1; 81; 91, *a*.

**Not:** 80, 1; 81.

**Nouns:** 17-25.

Gender: 18-21.

Number: 22-25.

**Number:** 9-11; 22-25; 29.

**Numerals:** 38-40.

Cardinal: 38.

Ordinal: 39.

**O** (letter): 3; 59, *b*; Ap. N., 3.

**O** (conjunction): 78; 78, *c*.

**Old Forms:** 19(†); 23(†); 47(\*);

48, *d*; 50(\*); 63, *d*; 66, *a*;

68; 92; Ap. N., 3, *ç*.

**One** (indefinite): 55; 86.

**Only:** 82.

**Open Vowels:** 3; Ap. N., 3.

**Ought:** see **Modal Auxiliaries**.

**Participle:** 54, *a*, *b*; 62; 63, *d*;  
69-71.

Past: 54, *a*, *b*; 63, *d*; 71, *c*.

Present: 62; 69-71.

**Partitive Genitive:** 12, *a*; 88; 89.

**Passive:** 54, 1; 54, *f*; 55; 56, *c*.

**Perfect Tenses:** 54, 3; 56; 73;  
75.

**Personal Pronouns:** 46-52.

Conjunctive: 47-50.

Form: 47; 48, *c*, *d*; 50;  
52, 1.

Position: 48; 49.

Disjunctive: 51-52.

Omission: 51, 2; 51, *h*.

Use: 51; 51, 1; 51, *a*, *b*, *h*.

**Pitch:** Ap. V.

**Plural:** 22-25; 29.

Irregular: 23, *d*; 25.

Words in *-co* and *-go*: 23, *c*.

**Poetic Forms:** see **Old**.

**Possessive:** 17; 45; 52, 1.

**Prefixes:** 93, *a*.

**Prepositions:** 79.

*Da*: 79, *c*, *f*, *g*.

*To*: 79, *a*, *b*. [74.

**Present:** 65; 66, 4; 68, *f*, *g*; 73;

**Preterite:** 60; 65; 66, 2, 3; 68,  
*d*, *c*; 75.

**Preterite Perfect:** 54, 3; 75.

**Pronouns:** 41-52; 86-91.

Demonstrative: 42.

Indefinite: 86-91.

Interrogative, 43.

Personal: see **Personal**.

Possessive: see **Possessive**.

Reciprocal: see **Reciprocal**.

Reflexive: see **Reflexive**.

Relative: 44.

**Pronunciation:** 1-8; Ap. N., 1-6;  
Ap. V.

**Quantity:** 2; Ap. N., 2.

**Qualche:** 29, *b*; 89.

**Questions:** 43; 51, 2; 77, *f*, *g*;  
79, *b*; 81, *a*; Ap. V., 3.

**Reciprocal pronouns and verbs:**

47, 2; 48; 49; 50; 51, 3;

51, *f*; 52, 1; 56, *b*.

**Reflexive Pronouns:** 47, 2; 48;

49; 50; 51, 3; 52, 1; 55;

56, *b*; 63, *a*; 86.

**Reflexive Verbs:** 55; 56, *b*; 63, *a*;  
86.

**Santo:** 29, *c*.

**Shall:** 54, 2; 57.



**Should:** 54, 2; 57; 76; 77.

**Si:** 47-50; 52; 55; 56, *b*; 63, *a*;  
86.

**So:** 85, *a*.

**Some:** 89.

**Spelling:** 1-8.

**Subjunctive:** 44, *c*; 77; 78, *a*.

**Suffixes:** 35-37; 85; Ap. N., 3.

**Syllables:** 8.

**Tenses:**

Compound: 54; 56; 73;  
75.

Future: see **Future**.

Imperfect: see **Imperfect**.

Present: see **Present**.

Preterite: see **Preterite**.

**Than:** 33.

**There:** 84.

**Time of day:** 38, *c*.

**To:** 79, *a*, *b*.

**U** (letter): 2; Ap. N., 2.

**Verbs:** 53-77; 92; 93.

Auxiliary verbs: see **Auxiliary**.

Conjugation: see **Conjugation**.

Lists of irregular verbs: 92; 93.

Alphabetical: 93.

By conjugations: 92.

Moods: see **Moods**.

Tenses: see **Tenses**.

Regular verbs: 55-56; 59-63.

Irregular verbs: 64-68; 92.

Regular parts: 66.

Compound verbs: 67, *a*;  
93, *a*.

Old forms: 63, *d*; 68; 92.

**Vi** (adv.): 47, *a*; 84.

**Vowels:** 2-3; Ap. N., 2-3.

**Whatever:** 44, *c*.

**Whoever:** 44, *c*.

**Will:** 54, 2; 57.

**Would:** 54, 2; 54, *c*; 57; 76; 77.

**You:** 52; 86.

# MODERN LANGUAGES.

BOOKS FOR  
BEGINNERS.

## GERMAN. — *Sheldon's Short German Grammar.* (Price, 60 cents.)

For those who have studied other languages and wish to learn to read German

*Harris' German Lessons.* (Price, 60 cents.)

An Elementary Grammar, adapted for a short course or as introductory.

*Joynes-Meissner German Grammar.*

Part I., "Shorter German Grammar," 80 cents; complete Grammar, \$1.12.

*Joynes' German Reader for Beginners.* (Price, 90 cents.)

An introduction to reading; with notes, vocabulary and English Exercises.

*Deutsch's Select German Reader.* (Price, 90 cents.)

With notes and vocabulary. May be used with or without a grammar.

*Boisen's Preparatory German Prose.* (Price, 90 cents.)

Excellent selections of prose with full suggestive notes.

*Van der Smissen's Grimm's Märchen and Der Taucher.* (75 cents.)

In Roman type. With full notes and vocabulary.

*Super's Andersen's Märchen.* (Price, 80 cents.)

Graded, as far as possible, and with notes and vocabulary.

*Faulhaber's One Year Course in German.* (Price, 60 cents.)

A brief synopsis of German Grammar, with reading exercises.

## FRENCH. — *Edgren's Compendious French Grammar.*

Part I., the essentials of French Grammar, 35 cents. Complete book, \$1.12.

*Grandgen's Introduction to French Grammar.* (Ready in 1893.)

An Elementary Grammar, adapted for a short course or as introductory.

*Grandgen's Materials for French Composition.* (12 cents each.)

Pamphlets based on Super's Reader and other texts.

*Super's Preparatory French Reader.* (Price, 80 cents.)

Graded and interesting reading for school or college. With notes and vocabulary.

*Houghton's French by Reading.* (Price, \$1.12.)

For home or school. Elementary grammar and reading.

*Lyon and de Larpent's French Translation Book.* (Price, 60 cents.)

A very easy Reader with English exercises for reproduction.

*Joynes' French Fairy Tales.* (Price, 35 cents.)

With notes, vocabulary and English exercises based on the text.

## ITALIAN. — *Grandgen's Short Italian Grammar.* (Price, 80 cents.)

All the Grammar needed for a short course.

*Grandgen's Italian Composition.* (Price 60 cents.)

## SPANISH. — *Edgren's Short Spanish Grammar.* (Price, 80 cents.)

All the grammar needed for a short course.

*Todd's Cervantes' Don Quixote.* (In press.)

Twelve chapters with notes and vocabulary.

*Ybarra's Practical Method in Spanish.* (Price, \$1.20.)

---

D. C. HEATH & CO, Publishers,

BOSTON, NEW YORK, CHICAGO AND LONDON.

## *A One-Year Course in German.*

By OSCAR FAULHABER, Professor of Modern Languages, Phillips Exeter Academy, N.H. 168 pages. Cloth. Price, by mail, 65 cts. Intro. price, 60 cts.

**I**NTENDED for beginners who aim at rapid sight translation. It contains graded selections of descriptive and historical prose, accompanied by a vocabulary, notes bearing on word formation, etymology, the study of synonyms, and all the essentials of regular accidence. Everything that properly belongs to a more detailed second-year course has been omitted, the main object being to supply a good vocabulary and enough grammatical training to render easy the construction of sentences in ordinary prose. It contains everything required for college entrance examination, and is adapted to any course of study in which economy of time is a necessity.

## *Colloquial Exercises and Select German*

*Reader.* With notes and vocabulary. By WILLIAM DEUTSCH, of the St. Louis High School. Cloth. 367 pages. Price by mail, \$1.00. Introduction price, 90 cts.

**T**HE main portion of the book consists of anecdotes forming the bases for the Colloquial Exercises, and have proved to be an easy and sure way of acquiring the language as far as business and social purposes are concerned. The reading matter and the selections from poetry are eminently adapted for translations in the classroom; and the tables of common and peculiar phrases and idioms greatly facilitate the progress of any class or individual student.

*This book is the outgrowth of many years' school-room work by one of the most successful teachers in the country and is in use in many of our leading colleges and high schools.*

H. C. G. Brandt, *Prof. of German, Hamilton Coll.*: I think it is an excellent book. I shall soon use it for beginners.

H. S. White, *Prof. of German, Cornell Univ.*: It seems to me to be excellently adapted to its purpose.

Frederick Lutz, *recent Instructor in German, Harvard Univ., now Prof. of German, Albion Coll., Mich.*: After having used it at Harvard for nearly one

year, I can conscientiously say that it is an excellent book, well adapted to beginners. It deserves a large sale.

Henry Johnson, *Prof. of Modern Languages, Bowdoin Coll.*: Use has proved to me the excellence of the book.

H. B. Richardson, *Prof. of Modern Languages, Amherst Coll.*: With my beginners I have found it better adapted for the purpose than any book I have used.



